

(12) INTERNATIONAL APPLICATION PUBLISHED UNDER THE PATENT COOPERATION TREATY (PCT)

(19) World Intellectual Property Organization
International Bureau(43) International Publication Date
4 September 2003 (04.09.2003)

PCT

(10) International Publication Number
WO 03/072537 A2(51) International Patent Classification⁷: C07C 237/22,
235/74, 321/14, C07D 209/44, 217/00, 233/16, A61K
31/198, 31/472, A61P 3/00A.; 3211 Kearny Villa Lane, San Diego, CA 92123 (US).
PEI, Zhonghua; 1733 Cedar Glen Dr, Libertyville, IL
60048 (US). XIN, Zhili; 29607 N Birch Ave, Lake Bluff,
IL 60044 (US). LI, Xiaofeng; 17577 W Horseshoe Lane,
Gurnee, IL 60031 (US). OOST, Thorsten, K.; 8717 82nd
St, Apt 307, Pleasant Prairie, WI 53158 (US).

(21) International Application Number: PCT/US03/03663

(22) International Filing Date: 6 February 2003 (06.02.2003)

(74) Agents: ROGERS, Christopher, P. et al.; D-377 AP6A-1,
100 Abbott Park Road, Abbott Park, IL 60064-6008 (US).

(25) Filing Language: English

(26) Publication Language: English

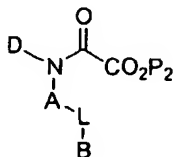
(81) Designated States (national): CA, JP, MX.

(30) Priority Data:
10/085,157 27 February 2002 (27.02.2002) US(84) Designated States (regional): European patent (AT, BE,
BG, CH, CY, CZ, DE, DK, EE, ES, FI, FR, GB, GR, HU,
IE, IT, LU, MC, NL, PT, SE, SI, SK, TR).(71) Applicant: ABBOTT LABORATORIES [US/US];
D-377 AP6A-1, 100 Abbott Park Road, Abbott Park, IL
60064-6008 (US).

Published:

— without international search report and to be republished
upon receipt of that report(72) Inventors: SZCZEPANKIEWICZ, Bruce, G.; 76 Old
Farm Ct, Lindenhurst, IL 60046 (US). LIU, Gang; 838
Adderly Ln, Gurnee, IL 60031 (US). JANOWICK, David,For two-letter codes and other abbreviations, refer to the "Guid-
ance Notes on Codes and Abbreviations" appearing at the begin-
ning of each regular issue of the PCT Gazette.

(54) Title: SELECTIVE PROTEIN TYROSINE PHOSPHATATASE INHIBITORS



(I)

(57) Abstract: Compounds of formula (I), or therapeutically acceptable
salts thereof, are selective protein tyrosine kinase-B (PTP1B) inhibitors.
Preparation of the compounds, compositions containing the compounds,
and treatment of disorders using the compounds are disclosed.

Selective Protein Tyrosine Phosphatase Inhibitors

5

10 **Technical Field**

The present invention is directed to compounds useful for the selective inhibition of protein tyrosine phosphatase-1B (PTP1B) preparation of the compounds, compositions containing the compounds and the treatment of disorders using the compounds.

15 **Background of the Invention**

Insulin is an important regulator of different metabolic processes and plays a key role in the control of blood glucose. Defects related to its synthesis and signaling lead to diabetes mellitus. Binding of insulin to the insulin receptor (IR) causes rapid autophosphorylation of several tyrosine residues in the intracellular part of the β -subunit. Three closely positioned tyrosine residues (the tyrosine-1150 domain) must be phosphorylated to obtain maximum activity of the insulin receptor tyrosine kinase (IRTK) which transmits the further signals via tyrosine phosphorylation of other cellular substrates, including insulin receptor substrate-1 (IRS-1).

Protein phosphorylation is a well-recognized cellular mechanism for transducing and regulating signals during different stages of cellular function (Hunter, *Phil. Trans. R. Soc. Lond. B* 353: 583-605 (1998); Chan *et al.*, *Annu. Rev. Immunol.* 12: 555-592 (1994); Zhang, *Curr. Top. Cell. Reg.* 35: 21-68 (1997); Matozaki and Kasuga, *Cell. Signal.* 8: 113-119 (1996)). There are at least two major classes of phosphatases, namely, (1) Those that dephosphorylate proteins that contain a phosphate group(s) on a serine or threonine moiety (termed Ser/Thr. Phosphatases or dual specificity phosphatases or DSPs) and (2) those that remove a phosphate group(s) from the amino acid tyrosine (termed protein tyrosine phosphatases or PTPases or PTPs).

Several studies clearly indicate that the activity of the auto-phosphorylated IRTK can be reversed by dephosphorylation *in vitro* (reviewed in Goldstein, *Receptor* 3: 1-15 (1993)) with the tri-phosphorylated tyrosine-1150 domain being the most sensitive target for PTPases. This tri-phosphorylated tyrosine functions as a control switch of IRTK activity and

35

the IRTK appears to be tightly regulated by PTP-mediated dephosphorylation *in vivo* (Faure *et al. J. Biol. Chem.* 267: 11215-11221 (1992)).

PTP1B has been identified as at least one of the major phosphatases involved in the IRTK regulation through studies conducted both *in vitro* (Seely *et al. Diabetes* 45: 1379-1385 (1996)) and *in vivo* using PTP1B neutralizing antibodies (Ahmad *et al. J. Biol. Chem.* 270: 20503-20508 (1995)). Two independent studies have indicated that PTP 1B knock-out mice have increased glucose tolerance, increased insulin sensitivity and decreased weight gain on a high fat diet (Elchebly *et al. Science* 283: 1544-1548 (1999) and Klamann *et al. Mol. Cell. Biol.* 20: 5479-5489 (2000)). Overexpression or altered activity of tyrosine phosphatase PTP1B can contribute to the progression of various disorders, including insulin resistance and diabetes (*Ann. Rev. Biochem.* 54: 897-930 (1985)). Furthermore, there is evidence which suggests inhibition of protein tyrosine phosphatase PTP1B is therapeutically beneficial for the treatment of disorders such as type I and II diabetes, obesity, autoimmune disorder, acute and chronic inflammation, osteoporosis and various forms of cancer (*J. Natl. Cancer Inst.* 86: 372-378 (1994); *Mol. Cell. Biol.* 14: 6674-6682 (1994); *The EMBO J.*, 12: 1937-1946 (1993); *J. Biol. Chem.* 269: 30659-30667 (1994); and *Biochemical Pharmacology* 54: 703-711(1997)).

The PTPases are a family of enzymes that can be classified into two subgroups, namely, 1) intracellular or nontransmembrane PTPases and 2) receptor-type or transmembrane PTPases. Most known intracellular type PTPases contain a single conserved catalytic phosphatase domain consisting of 220-240 amino acid residues. The region outside the PTPase domains are believed to play important roles in localizing the intracellular PTPases subcellularly (Mauro, L.J. and Dixon J.E. *TIBS* 19: 151-155 (1994)). The first intracellular PTPases to be purified and characterized was PTP1B (Tonks, *et al. J. Biol. Chem.* 263: 6722-6730 (1988)). Other examples of intracellular PTPases include (1) T-cell PTPase/TC-PTP (Cool *et al. Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 86: 5257-5261 (1989)), (2) neuronal phosphatases STEP (Lombroso *et al. Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 88: 7242-7246 (1991)), (3) PTP1C/SH-PTP1/SHP-1 (Plutzky *et al. Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 89: 1123-1127 (1992)), (4) PTP1D/Syp/SH-PPT2/SHP-2 (Vogel *et al. Science* 259: 1611-1614 (1993); Feng *et al. Science* 259: 1607-1611(1993)).

Receptor-type PTPases consist of a) a putative ligand-binding extracellular domain, b) a transmembrane segment, and c) an intracellular catalytic region. The structure and sizes of the putative ligand-binding extracellular domains of receptor-type PTPases are quite divergent. In contrast, the intracellular catalytic regions of receptor-type PTPases are very homologous to each other and to the intracellular PTPases. Most receptor-type PTPases have two tandemly duplicated catalytic PTPase domains. The first PTPases receptor subtypes identified were (1) CD45 (Ralph, S.J. *EMBO J.* 6: 1251-1257 (1987)) and (2) LAR (Streuli *et*

al. J. Exp. Med. 168:1523-1530 (1988)). Since then many more receptor subtypes have been isolated and characterized, including PTP α , PTP β , PTP δ , PTP ϵ , PTP ξ (Krueger, *et al. EMBO J.* 9: 3241-3252 (1990)).

Although agents have been identified for use as PTP1B inhibitors, such as those heteroaryl and aryl amino(oxo) acetic acids described in PCT Patent Publications WO 01/19831, WO 01/19830, and WO 01/17516, such agents do not exhibit separation of the inhibitory activity between PTP1B and TCPTP. Furthermore, because of the potential immunosuppressive effects resulting from inhibiting TCPTP, selective inhibition of PTP1B over TCPTP would make such agents more suitable for drug development as they could diminish or eliminate side effects derived from such nonselectivity.

Therefore, the development of PTP inhibitors which exhibit selectivity for the PTP1B receptor over other PTPases would minimize potential side effects otherwise resulting from the nonselective inhibition of other PTPases, thus making them more suitable for drug development. Accordingly, because of the important roles played by unregulated protein tyrosine phosphatase PTP1B in the disorder states of type I and II diabetes, obesity, autoimmune disorder, acute and chronic inflammation, osteoporosis and various forms of cancers, compounds which selectively inhibit this enzyme could provide the desired therapeutic benefits without the unwanted side effects derived from inhibiting other related phosphatases.

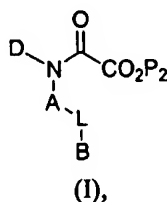
20

Summary of the Invention

According to the present invention, PTP1B inhibitors which demonstrate selective inhibitory activity for PTP1B over other phosphatases are provided.

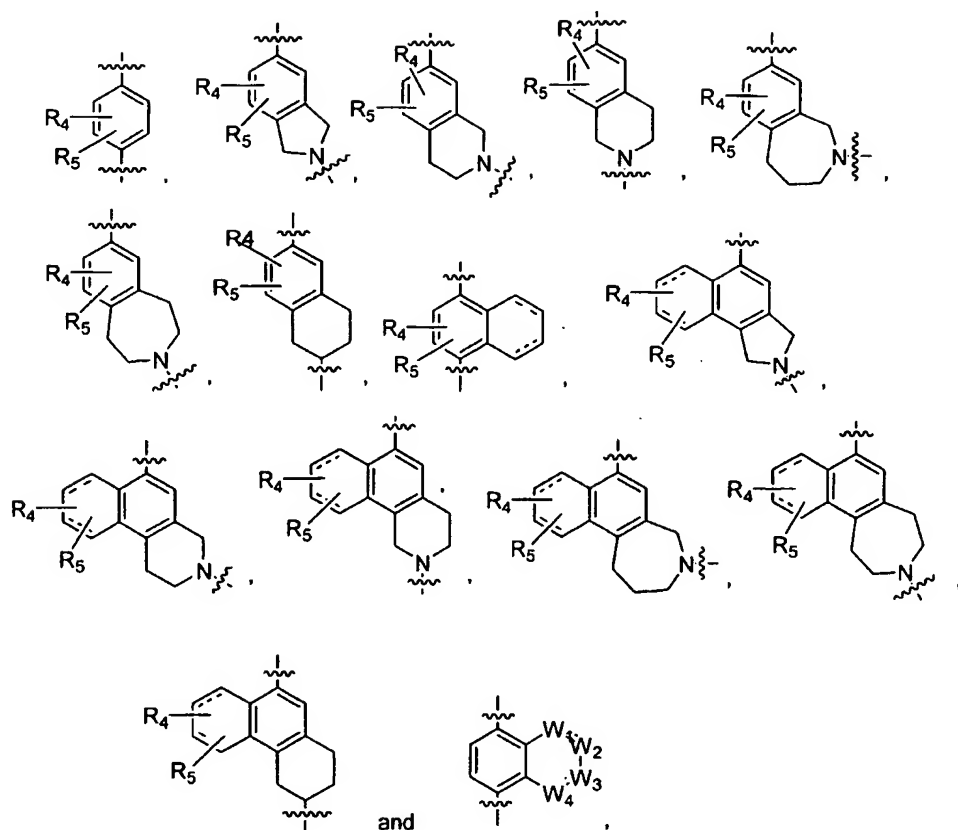
In particular, the present invention is directed to compounds of formula (I)

25



or a therapeutically acceptable salt or prodrug thereof, wherein

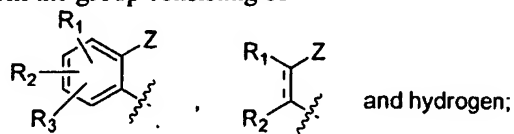
A is selected from the group consisting of



wherein the top is connected to the nitrogen and the bottom is connected to L, and
the dotted line is either absent or is a single bond;

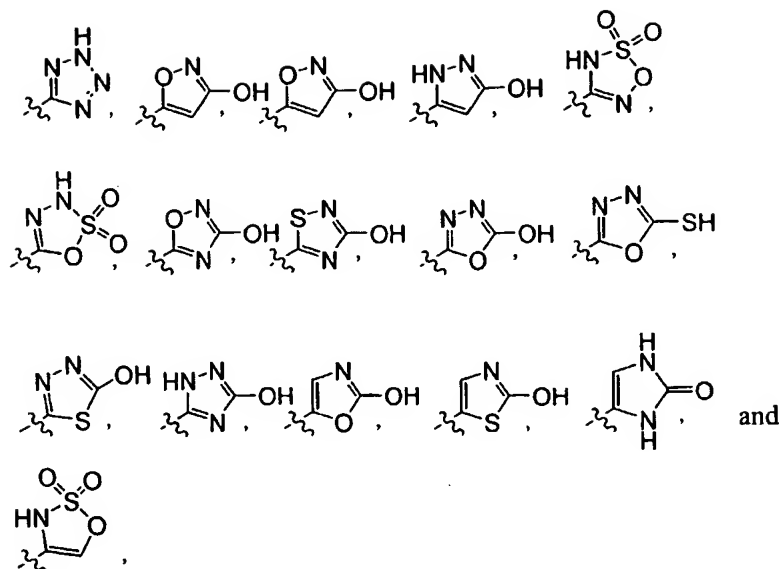
B is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, aryl, arylalkyl, heterocycle
and heterocyclealkyl;

D is selected from the group consisting of



and hydrogen;

Z is selected from the group consisting of alkoxy, alkyl, alkylNHSO₂-, amino,
arylNHSO₂-, cyano, nitro, -CO₂P₁, -SO₃H, -PO(OH)₂, -CH₂PO(OH)₂, -CHFPO(OH)₂, -
CF₂(PO(OH)₂), -C(=NH)NH₂, and the following 5-membered heterocycles:



wherein the dotted line is either absent or is a single bond;

P₁ and P₂ are independently selected from hydrogen, alkyl, alkenyl, arylalkyl, cycloalkyl and (cycloalkyl)alkyl;

5 R_1 , R_2 , R_3 , R_4 and R_5 are independently selected from hydrogen, alkoxy, alkyl, aryl, arylalkyl, cyano, halo, haloalkoxy, haloalkyl, heterocycle, heterocyclealkyl, hydroxy, hydroxyalkyl, nitro, NR_AR_B , $NR_AR_BC(O)$, $NR_AR_BC(O)alkyl$ and $NR_AR_BC(O)alkenyl$, wherein R_A and R_B are independently selected from hydrogen, alkyl, alkoxycarbonyl, alkylsulfonyl, aryl, arylalkylcarbonyl, arylcarbonyl, arylsulfonyl and $(R_CR_DN)carbonyl$
10 wherein R_C and R_D are independently selected from hydrogen, alkyl, aryl, and arylalkyl, or R_A and R_B taken together with the nitrogen to which they are attached form a ring selected from the group consisting of pyrrolidine, piperidine, morpholine, homopiperidine and piperazine;

L is selected from the group consisting of

15 $-(CH_2)_mX_1(CH_2)_nCH(R_8)C(R_{9A})(R_{9B})X_2(CH_2)_pC(O)N(R_{10})CH(CO_2R_{11})(CH_2)_qX_3^-;$
 $-(CH_2)_mX_1(CH_2)_nCH(R_8)C(R_{9A})(R_{9B})X_2(CH_2)_pEC(O)N(R_{10})CH(CO_2R_{11})(CH_2)_qX_3^-;$
 $-(CH_2)_mX_1(CH_2)_nCH(R_8)C(R_{9A})(R_{9B})X_2(CH_2)_pX_3^-;$
 $-(CH_2)_mX_1(CH_2)_nCH(R_8)C(R_{9A})(R_{9B})X_2(CH_2)_pX_3(CH_2)_qX_4^-;$ and
 $-(CH_2)_mX_1(CH_2)_nCH(R_8)C(R_{9A})(R_{9B})X_2(CH_2)_pE(CH_2)_qX_3^-$, wherein each group is drawn
20 with the left end attached to A and the right end attached to B;

m, n, p and q are independently between 0-4;

R_8 is selected from hydrogen, hydroxy, $NR_A R_B$ and $(NR_A R_B)alkyl$;

R_{9A} and R_{9B} are independently selected from hydrogen, alkyl, hydroxyalkyl and $R_E R_F$ Nalkyl, wherein R_E and R_F are independently selected from hydrogen, alkyl, alkoxy carbonyl and alkanoyl, or R_{9A} and R_{9B} taken together are oxo;

R_{10} is selected from hydrogen, alkyl, alkanoyl and alkoxy carbonyl;

5 R_{11} is selected from hydrogen, alkyl, alkenyl, arylalkyl, cycloalkyl, and (cycloalkyl)alkyl;

E is selected from aryl and cycloalkyl;

X_1 , X_2 , X_3 , and X_4 are independently absent or are independently selected from NR_G , O, S, S(O) and S(O)₂, wherein R_G is selected from hydrogen, alkyl, alkanoyl and
10 alkoxy carbonyl; and

W_1 , W_2 , W_3 and W_4 are independently selected from CH, CH₂, N, NH and O.

According to another embodiment, the present invention is directed to a pharmaceutical composition comprising a therapeutically effective amount of a compound of formula (I) in combination with a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier.

15 According to another embodiment, the present invention is directed to method of selectively inhibiting protein tyrosine phosphatase 1B comprising administering a therapeutically effective amount of a compound of formula (I).

According to another embodiment, the present invention is directed to a method of treating disorders caused by overexpressed or altered protein tyrosine phosphatase 1B
20 comprising administering a therapeutically effective amount of a compound of formula (I).

According to another embodiment, the present invention is directed to a method of treating type I and type II diabetes, impaired glucose tolerance and insulin resistance, comprising administering a therapeutically effective amount of a compound of formula (I).

25 According to another embodiment, the present invention is directed to a method of treating obesity comprising administering a therapeutically effective amount of a compound of formula (I).

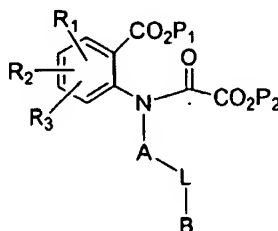
According to another embodiment, the present invention is directed to a method of treating autoimmune disorders, acute and chronic inflammatory disorders, osteoporosis, cancer, malignant disorders comprising administering a therapeutically effective amount of a
30 compound of formula (I).

Detailed Description of the Invention

The present invention provides compounds which selectively inhibit protein tyrosine phosphatase (PTP1B). In particular, the compounds of the present invention are selective
35 PTP1B inhibitors and therefore are useful for treating disorders caused by overexpressed or altered protein tyrosine phosphatase (PTP1B). These disorders include autoimmune

disorders, acute and chronic inflammatory disorders, osteoporosis, obesity, cancer, malignant disorders, and type I and type II diabetes.

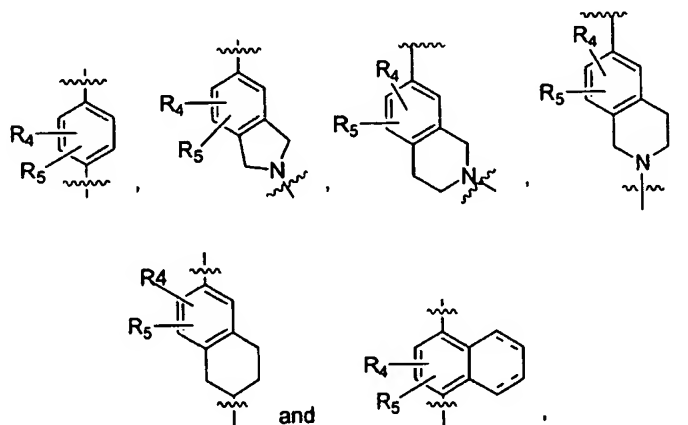
According to one embodiment, the present invention is directed to compounds of formula (II)



(II),

or therapeutically acceptable salt or prodrug thereof, wherein A, B, E, L, P₁, P₂, R₁, R₂, R₃, R₄, R₅, R₈, R_{9A}, R_{9B}, R₁₀, R₁₁, R_A, R_B, R_C, R_D, R_E, R_F, R_G, X₁, X₂, X₃, X₄, W₁, W₂, W₃, W₄, Z, m, n, p, q are as defined in formula (I).

In another embodiment, the present invention is directed to compounds of formula (II), or a therapeutically acceptable salt thereof, wherein A is selected from the group consisting of



wherein the top is connected to the nitrogen and the bottom is connected to L, and the dotted line is either absent or is a single bond;

R₁, R₂, R₃, R₄ and R₅ are selected from hydrogen, alkoxy, alkyl, cyano, halo, haloalkoxy, haloalkyl, heterocycle, hydroxy, hydroxyalkyl, nitro, NR_AR_B, NR_AR_BC(O), NR_AR_BC(O)alkyl and NR_AR_BC(O)alkenyl;

R₁₀ is selected from hydrogen and alkyl;

R₁₁ is selected from hydrogen, alkyl and arylalkyl; and

wherein B, E, L, P₁, P₂, R₈, R_{9A}, R_{9B}, R_A, R_B, R_C, R_D, R_E, R_F, R_G, X₁, X₂, X₃, X₄, W₁, W₂, W₃, W₄, Z, m, n, p, q are defined in formula (I).

In another embodiment, the present invention is directed to compounds of formula (II), wherein L is

5 $-(CH_2)_mX_1(CH_2)_nCH(R_8)C(R_{9A})(R_{9B})X_2(CH_2)_pC(O)N(R_{10})CH(CO_2R_{11})(CH_2)_qX_3-$; and wherein A, B, E, P₁, P₂, R₁, R₂, R₃, R₄, R₅, R₈, R_{9A}, R_{9B}, R₁₀, R₁₁, R_A, R_B, R_C, R_D, R_E, R_F, R_G, X₁, X₂, X₃, X₄, W₁, W₂, W₃, W₄, Z, m, n, p, q are defined in formula (I).

In another embodiment, the present invention is directed to compounds of formula (II), wherein L is

10 $-(CH_2)_mX_1(CH_2)_nCH(R_8)C(R_{9A})(R_{9B})X_2(CH_2)_pC(O)N(R_{10})CH(CO_2R_{11})(CH_2)_qX_3-$; R₈ is NR_AR_B; and wherein A, B, E, P₁, P₂, R₁, R₂, R₃, R₄, R₅, R_{9A}, R_{9B}, R₁₀, R₁₁, R_A, R_B, R_C, R_D, R_E, R_F, R_G, X₁, X₂, X₃, X₄, W₁, W₂, W₃, W₄, Z, m, n, p, q are defined in formula (I).

In another embodiment, the present invention is directed to compounds of formula (II), wherein L is

15 $-(CH_2)_mX_1(CH_2)_nCH(R_8)C(R_{9A})(R_{9B})X_2(CH_2)_pC(O)N(R_{10})CH(CO_2R_{11})(CH_2)_qX_3-$; R₈ is NR_AR_B; R_{9A} and R_{9B} together are oxo; and wherein A, B, E, P₁, P₂, R₁, R₂, R₃, R₄, R₅, R₁₀, R₁₁, R_A, R_B, R_C, R_D, R_E, R_F, R_G, X₁, X₂, X₃, X₄, W₁, W₂, W₃, W₄, Z, m, n, p, q are defined in formula (I).

In another embodiment, the present invention is directed to compounds of formula (II), wherein L is

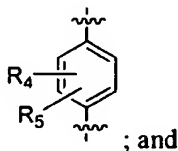
20 $-(CH_2)_mX_1(CH_2)_nCH(R_8)C(R_{9A})(R_{9B}))X_2(CH_2)_pC(O)N(R_{10})CH(CO_2R_{11})(CH_2)_qX_3-$; R₈ is NR_AR_B; R_{9A} and R_{9B} together are oxo; X₂ is NR_C; and wherein A, B, E, P₁, P₂, R₁, R₂, R₃, R₄, R₅, R₁₀, R₁₁, R_A, R_B, R_C, R_D, R_E, R_F, R_G, X₁, X₃, X₄, W₁, W₂, W₃, W₄, Z, m, n, p, q are defined in formula (I).

In another embodiment, the present invention is directed to compounds of formula (II), wherein L is

25 $-(CH_2)_mX_1(CH_2)_nCH(R_8)C(R_{9A})(R_{9B}))X_2(CH_2)_pC(O)N(R_{10})CH(CO_2R_{11})(CH_2)_qX_3-$; R₈ is NR_AR_B; R_{9A} and R_{9B} together are oxo; X₂ is NR_C; B is selected from aryl and heterocycle; and wherein A, E, P₁, P₂, R₁, R₂, R₃, R₄, R₅, R₁₀, R₁₁, R_A, R_B, R_C, R_D, R_E, R_F, R_G, X₁, X₃, X₄, W₁, W₂, W₃, W₄, Z, m, n, p, q are defined in formula (I).

In another embodiment, the present invention is directed to compounds of formula (II), wherein L is

30 $-(CH_2)_mX_1(CH_2)_nCH(R_8)C(R_{9A})(R_{9B}))X_2(CH_2)_pC(O)N(R_{10})CH(CO_2R_{11})(CH_2)_qX_3-$; R₈ is NR_AR_B; R_{9A} and R_{9B} together are oxo; X₂ is NR_C; B is selected from aryl and heterocycle; A is



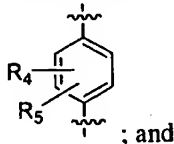
wherein E, P₁, P₂, R₁, R₂, R₃, R₄, R₅, R₁₀, R₁₁, R_A, R_B, R_C, R_D, R_E, R_F, R_G, X₁, X₃, X₄, W₁, W₂, W₃, W₄, Z, m, n, p, q are defined in formula (I).

In another embodiment, the present invention is directed to compounds of formula (II), wherein L is

5 $-(CH_2)_mX_1(CH_2)_nCH(R_8)C(R_{9A})(R_{9B})X_2(CH_2)_pC(O)N(R_{10})CH(CO_2R_{11})(CH_2)_qX_3^-$; R₈ is NR_AR_B; R_{9A} and R_{9B} together are oxo; X₂ is NR_C; B is hydrogen; and wherein A, E, P₁, P₂, R₁, R₂, R₃, R₄, R₅, R₁₀, R₁₁, R_A, R_B, R_C, R_D, R_E, R_F, R_G, X₁, X₃, X₄, W₁, W₂, W₃, W₄, Z, m, n, p, q are defined in formula (I).

10 In another embodiment, the present invention is directed to compounds of formula (II), wherein L is

$-(CH_2)_mX_1(CH_2)_nCH(R_8)C(R_{9A})(R_{9B})X_2(CH_2)_pC(O)N(R_{10})CH(CO_2R_{11})(CH_2)_qX_3^-$; R₈ is NR_AR_B; R_{9A} and R_{9B} together are oxo; X₂ is NR_C; B is hydrogen; A is



15 wherein E, P₁, P₂, R₁, R₂, R₃, R₄, R₅, R₁₀, R₁₁, R_A, R_B, R_C, R_D, R_E, R_F, R_G, X₁, X₃, X₄, W₁, W₂, W₃, W₄, Z, m, n, p, q are defined in formula (I).

In another embodiment, the present invention is directed to compounds of formula (II), wherein L is

20 $-(CH_2)_mX_1(CH_2)_nCH(R_8)C(R_{9A})(R_{9B})X_2(CH_2)_pEC(O)N(R_{10})CH(CO_2R_{11})(CH_2)_qX_3^-$; and wherein A, B, E, P₁, P₂, R₁, R₂, R₃, R₄, R₅, R₈, R_{9A}, R_{9B}, R₁₀, R₁₁, R_A, R_B, R_C, R_D, R_E, R_F, R_G, X₁, X₂, X₃, X₄, W₁, W₂, W₃, W₄, Z, m, n, p, q are defined in formula (I).

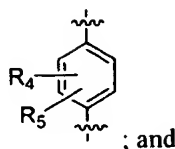
In another embodiment, the present invention is directed to compounds of formula (II), wherein L is

25 $-(CH_2)_mX_1(CH_2)_nCH(R_8)C(R_{9A})(R_{9B})X_2(CH_2)_pEC(O)N(R_{10})CH(CO_2R_{11})(CH_2)_qX_3^-$; R₈ is NR_AR_B; and wherein A, B, E, P₁, P₂, R₁, R₂, R₃, R₄, R₅, R_{9A}, R_{9B}, R₁₀, R₁₁, R_A, R_B, R_C, R_D, R_E, R_F, R_G, X₁, X₂, X₃, X₄, W₁, W₂, W₃, W₄, Z, m, n, p, q are defined in formula (I).

In another embodiment, the present invention is directed to compounds of formula (II), wherein L is

30 $-(CH_2)_mX_1(CH_2)_nCH(R_8)C(R_{9A})(R_{9B})X_2(CH_2)_pEC(O)N(R_{10})CH(CO_2R_{11})(CH_2)_qX_3^-$; R₈ is NR_AR_B; R_{9A} and R_{9B} together are oxo; and wherein A, B, E, P₁, P₂, R₁, R₂, R₃, R₄, R₅, R₁₀, R₁₁, R_A, R_B, R_C, R_D, R_E, R_F, R_G, X₁, X₂, X₃, X₄, W₁, W₂, W₃, W₄, Z, m, n, p, q are defined in formula (I).

In another embodiment, the present invention is directed to compounds of formula (II), wherein L is



wherein E, P₁, P₂, R₁, R₂, R₃, R₄, R₅, R₁₀, R₁₁, R_A, R_B, R_C, R_D, R_E, R_F, R_G, X₁, X₄, W₁, W₂, W₃, W₄, Z, m, n, p, q are defined in formula (I).

In another embodiment, the present invention is directed to compounds of formula

(II), wherein L is

$-(CH_2)_mX_1(CH_2)_nCH(R_8)C(R_{9A})(R_{9B}))X_2(CH_2)_pC(O)N(R_{10})CH(CO_2R_{11})(CH_2)_qX_3-$;

R₈ is NR_AR_B; R_{9A} and R_{9B} together are oxo; X₂ is NR_C; X₃ is S; B is aryl; and wherein A, E, P₁, P₂, R₁, R₂, R₃, R₄, R₅, R₁₀, R₁₁, R_A, R_B, R_C, R_D, R_E, R_F, R_G, X₁, X₄, W₁, W₂, W₃, W₄, Z, m, n, p, q are defined in formula (I).

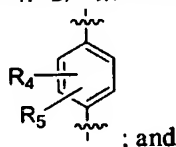
10

In another embodiment, the present invention is directed to compounds of formula

(II), wherein L is

$-(CH_2)_mX_1(CH_2)_nCH(R_8)C(R_{9A})(R_{9B}))X_2(CH_2)_pC(O)N(R_{10})CH(CO_2R_{11})(CH_2)_qX_3-$;

R₈ is NR_AR_B; R_{9A} and R_{9B} together are oxo; X₂ is NR_C; X₃ is S; B is aryl; is



15

wherein E, L, P₁, P₂, R₁, R₂, R₃, R₄, R₅, R₁₀, R₁₁, R_A, R_B, R_C, R_D, R_E, R_F, R_G, X₁, X₄, W₁, W₂, W₃, W₄, Z, m, n, p, q are defined in formula (I).

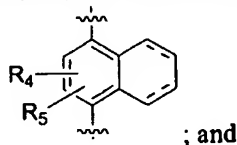
In another embodiment, the present invention is directed to compounds of formula

(II), wherein L is

$-(CH_2)_mX_1(CH_2)_nCH(R_8)C(R_{9A})(R_{9B}))X_2(CH_2)_pC(O)N(R_{10})CH(CO_2R_{11})(CH_2)_qX_3-$;

R₈ is NR_AR_B; R_{9A} and R_{9B} together are oxo; X₂ is NR_C; X₃ is S; B is alkyl; A is

20



wherein E, L, P₁, P₂, R₁, R₂, R₃, R₄, R₅, R₁₀, R₁₁, R_A, R_B, R_C, R_D, R_E, R_F, R_G, X₁, X₄, W₁, W₂, W₃, W₄, Z, m, n, p, q are defined in formula (I).

25

In another embodiment, the present invention is directed to compounds of formula

(II), wherein L is $-(CH_2)_mX_1(CH_2)_nCH(R_8)C(R_{9A})(R_{9B}))X_2(CH_2)_pX_3-$; and wherein A, B, E,

P₁, P₂, R₁, R₂, R₃, R₄, R₅, R₈, R_{9A}, R_{9B}, R₁₀, R₁₁, R_A, R_B, R_C, R_D, R_E, R_F, R_G, X₁, X₂, X₃, X₄, W₁, W₂, W₃, W₄, Z, m, n, p, q are defined in formula (I).

In another embodiment, the present invention is directed to compounds of formula (II), wherein L is $-(CH_2)_mX_1(CH_2)_nCH(R_8)C(R_{9A})(R_{9B})X_2(CH_2)_pX_3^-$; R_8 is NR_AR_B ; and wherein A, B, E, P_1 , P_2 , R_1 , R_2 , R_3 , R_4 , R_5 , R_{9A} , R_{9B} , R_{10} , R_{11} , R_A , R_B , R_C , R_D , R_E , R_F , R_G , X_1 , X_2 , X_3 , X_4 , W_1 , W_2 , W_3 , W_4 , Z , m , n , p , q are defined in formula (I).

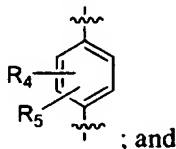
5 In another embodiment, the present invention is directed to compounds of formula (II), wherein L is $-(CH_2)_mX_1(CH_2)_nCH(R_8)C(R_{9A})(R_{9B})X_2(CH_2)_pX_3^-$; R_8 is NR_AR_B ; R_{9A} and R_{9B} together are oxo; and wherein A, B, E, P_1 , P_2 , R_1 , R_2 , R_3 , R_4 , R_5 , R_{10} , R_{11} , R_A , R_B , R_C , R_D , R_E , R_F , R_G , X_1 , X_2 , X_3 , X_4 , W_1 , W_2 , W_3 , W_4 , Z , m , n , p , q are defined in formula (I).

10 In another embodiment, the present invention is directed to compounds of formula (II), wherein L is $-(CH_2)_mX_1(CH_2)_nCH(R_8)C(R_{9A})(R_{9B})X_2(CH_2)_pX_3^-$; R_8 is NR_AR_B ; R_{9A} and R_{9B} together are oxo; X_2 is NR_C ; and wherein A, B, E, P_1 , P_2 , R_1 , R_2 , R_3 , R_4 , R_5 , R_{10} , R_{11} , R_A , R_B , R_C , R_D , R_E , R_F , R_G , X_1 , X_3 , X_4 , W_1 , W_2 , W_3 , W_4 , Z , m , n , p , q are defined in formula (I).

15 In another embodiment, the present invention is directed to compounds of formula (II), wherein L is $-(CH_2)_mX_1(CH_2)_nCH(R_8)C(R_{9A})(R_{9B})X_2(CH_2)_pX_3^-$; R_8 is NR_AR_B ; R_{9A} and R_{9B} together are oxo; X_2 is NR_C ; X_3 is O; and wherein A, B, E, P_1 , P_2 , R_1 , R_2 , R_3 , R_4 , R_5 , R_{10} , R_{11} , R_A , R_B , R_C , R_D , R_E , R_F , R_G , X_1 , X_4 , W_1 , W_2 , W_3 , W_4 , Z , m , n , p , q are defined in formula (I).

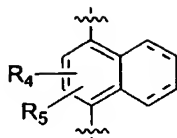
20 In another embodiment, the present invention is directed to compounds of formula (II), wherein L is $-(CH_2)_mX_1(CH_2)_nCH(R_8)C(R_{9A})(R_{9B})X_2(CH_2)_pX_3^-$; R_8 is NR_AR_B ; R_{9A} and R_{9B} together are oxo; X_2 is NR_C ; X_3 is O; B is aryl; and wherein A, E, P_1 , P_2 , R_1 , R_2 , R_3 , R_4 , R_5 , R_{10} , R_{11} , R_A , R_B , R_C , R_D , R_E , R_F , R_G , X_1 , X_4 , W_1 , W_2 , W_3 , W_4 , Z , m , n , p , q are defined in formula (I).

25 In another embodiment, the present invention is directed to compounds of formula (II), wherein L is $-(CH_2)_mX_1(CH_2)_nCH(R_8)C(R_{9A})(R_{9B})X_2(CH_2)_pX_3^-$; R_8 is NR_AR_B ; R_{9A} and R_{9B} together are oxo; X_2 is NR_C ; X_3 is O; B is aryl; A is



wherein E, P_1 , P_2 , R_1 , R_2 , R_3 , R_4 , R_5 , R_{10} , R_{11} , R_A , R_B , R_C , R_D , R_E , R_F , R_G , X_1 , X_4 , W_1 , W_2 , W_3 , W_4 , Z , m , n , p , q are defined in formula (I).

30 In another embodiment, the present invention is directed to compounds of formula (II), wherein L is $-(CH_2)_mX_1(CH_2)_nCH(R_8)C(R_{9A})(R_{9B})X_2(CH_2)_pX_3^-$; R_8 is NR_AR_B ; R_{9A} and R_{9B} together are oxo; X_2 is NR_C ; X_3 is O; B is aryl; A is



; and

wherein E, P₁, P₂, R₁, R₂, R₃, R₄, R₅, R₁₀, R₁₁, R_A, R_B, R_C, R_D, R_E, R_F, R_G, X₃, X₄, W₁, W₂, W₃, W₄, Z, m, n, p, q are defined in formula (I).

In another embodiment, the present invention is directed to compounds of formula (II), wherein L is $-(CH_2)_mX_1(CH_2)_nCH(R_8)C(R_{9A})(R_{9B})X_2(CH_2)_pX_3-$; R₈ is hydrogen; and
 5 wherein A, B, E, P₁, P₂, R₁, R₂, R₃, R₄, R₅, R_{9A}, R_{9B}, R₁₀, R₁₁, R_A, R_B, R_C, R_D, R_E, R_F, R_G, X₁, X₂, X₃, X₄, W₁, W₂, W₃, W₄, Z, m, n, p, q are defined in formula (I).

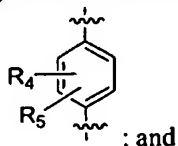
In another embodiment, the present invention is directed to compounds of formula (II), wherein L is $-(CH_2)_mX_1(CH_2)_nCH(R_8)C(R_{9A})(R_{9B})X_2(CH_2)_pX_3-$; R₈ is hydrogen; R_{9A} and
 10 R_{9B} together are oxo; and wherein A, B, E, P₁, P₂, R₁, R₂, R₃, R₄, R₅, R₁₀, R₁₁, R_A, R_B, R_C, R_D, R_E, R_F, R_G, X₁, X₂, X₃, X₄, W₁, W₂, W₃, W₄, Z, m, n, p, q are defined in formula (I).

In another embodiment, the present invention is directed to compounds of formula (II), wherein L is $-(CH_2)_mX_1(CH_2)_nCH(R_8)C(R_{9A})(R_{9B})X_2(CH_2)_pX_3-$; R₈ is hydrogen; R_{9A} and
 15 R_{9B} together are oxo; X₂ is NR_C; and wherein A, B, E, P₁, P₂, R₁, R₂, R₃, R₄, R₅, R₁₀, R₁₁, R_A, R_B, R_C, R_D, R_E, R_F, R_G, X₁, X₃, X₄, W₁, W₂, W₃, W₄, Z, m, n, p, q are defined in formula (I).

In another embodiment, the present invention is directed to compounds of formula (II), wherein L is $-(CH_2)_mX_1(CH_2)_nCH(R_8)C(R_{9A})(R_{9B})X_2(CH_2)_pX_3-$; R₈ is hydrogen; R_{9A} and
 20 R_{9B} together are oxo; X₂ is NR_C; X₃ is O; and wherein A, B, E, P₁, P₂, R₁, R₂, R₃, R₄, R₅, R₁₀, R₁₁, R_A, R_B, R_C, R_D, R_E, R_F, R_G, X₁, X₄, W₁, W₂, W₃, W₄, Z, m, n, p, q are defined in formula (I).

In another embodiment, the present invention is directed to compounds of formula (II), wherein L is $-(CH_2)_mX_1(CH_2)_nCH(R_8)C(R_{9A})(R_{9B})X_2(CH_2)_pX_3-$; R₈ is hydrogen; R_{9A} and
 25 R_{9B} together are oxo; X₂ is NR_C; X₃ is O; B is aryl; and wherein A, E, P₁, P₂, R₁, R₂, R₃, R₄, R₅, R₁₀, R₁₁, R_A, R_B, R_C, R_D, R_E, R_F, R_G, X₁, X₄, W₁, W₂, W₃, W₄, Z, m, n, p, q are defined in formula (I).

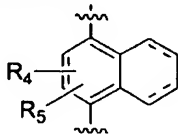
In another embodiment, the present invention is directed to compounds of formula (II), wherein L is $-(CH_2)_mX_1(CH_2)_nCH(R_8)C(R_{9A})(R_{9B})X_2(CH_2)_pX_3-$; R₈ is hydrogen; R_{9A} and
 R_{9B} together are oxo; X₂ is NR_C; X₃ is O; and B is aryl; A is



; and

wherein E, P₁, P₂, R₁, R₂, R₃, R₄, R₅, R₁₀, R₁₁, R_A, R_B, R_C, R_D, R_E, R_F, R_G, X₁, X₄, W₁, W₂, W₃, W₄, Z, m, n, p, q are defined in formula (I).

In another embodiment, the present invention is directed to compounds of formula (II), wherein L is $-(CH_2)_mX_1(CH_2)_nCH(R_8)C(R_{9A})(R_{9B})X_2(CH_2)_pX_3-$; R_8 is hydrogen; R_{9A} and R_{9B} together are oxo; X_2 is NR_C ; X_3 is O; B is aryl; A is



5 wherein E, P₁, P₂, R₁, R₂, R₃, R₄, R₅, R₁₀, R₁₁, R_A, R_B, R_C, R_D, R_E, R_F, R_G, X₁, X₄, W₁, W₂, W₃, W₄, Z, m, n, p, q are defined in formula (I).

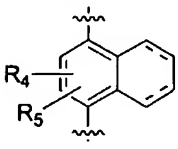
In another embodiment, the present invention is directed to compounds of formula (II), wherein L is $-(CH_2)_mX_1(CH_2)_nCH(R_8)C(R_{9A})(R_{9B})X_2(CH_2)_pX_3-$; R_8 is hydrogen; R_{9A} is alkyl; and wherein A, B, E, P₁, P₂, R₁, R₂, R₃, R₄, R₅, R_{9B}, R₁₀, R₁₁, R_A, R_B, R_C, R_D, R_E, R_F, R_G, X₁, X₂, X₃, X₄, W₁, W₂, W₃, W₄, Z, m, n, p, q are defined in formula (I).

In another embodiment, the present invention is directed to compounds of formula (II), wherein L is $-(CH_2)_mX_1(CH_2)_nCH(R_8)C(R_{9A})(R_{9B})X_2(CH_2)_pX_3-$; R_8 is hydrogen; R_{9A} is alkyl; X_2 is NR_C ; and wherein A, B, E, P₁, P₂, R₁, R₂, R₃, R₄, R₅, R_{9B}, R₁₀, R₁₁, R_A, R_B, R_C, R_D, R_E, R_F, R_G, X₁, X₃, X₄, W₁, W₂, W₃, W₄, Z, m, n, p, q are defined in formula (I).

15 In another embodiment, the present invention is directed to compounds of formula (II), wherein L is $-(CH_2)_mX_1(CH_2)_nCH(R_8)C(R_{9A})(R_{9B})X_2(CH_2)_pX_3-$; R_8 is hydrogen; R_{9A} is alkyl; X_2 is NR_C ; X_3 is O; and wherein A, B, E, P₁, P₂, R₁, R₂, R₃, R₄, R₅, R_{9B}, R₁₀, R₁₁, R_A, R_B, R_C, R_D, R_E, R_F, R_G, X₁, X₄, W₁, W₂, W₃, W₄, Z, m, n, p, q are defined in formula (I).

In another embodiment, the present invention is directed to compounds of formula (II), wherein L is $-(CH_2)_mX_1(CH_2)_nCH(R_8)C(R_{9A})(R_{9B})X_2(CH_2)_pX_3-$; R_8 is hydrogen; R_{9A} is alkyl; X_2 is NR_C ; X_3 is O; B is aryl; and wherein A, E, P₁, P₂, R₁, R₂, R₃, R₄, R₅, R_{9B}, R₁₀, R₁₁, R_A, R_B, R_C, R_D, R_E, R_F, R_G, X₁, X₄, W₁, W₂, W₃, W₄, Z, m, n, p, q are defined in formula (I).

25 In another embodiment, the present invention is directed to compounds of formula (II), wherein L is $-(CH_2)_mX_1(CH_2)_nCH(R_8)C(R_{9A})(R_{9B})X_2(CH_2)_pX_3-$; R_8 is hydrogen; R_{9A} is alkyl; X_2 is NR_C ; X_3 is O; B is aryl; A is



wherein E, P₁, P₂, R₁, R₂, R₃, R₄, R₅, R_{9B}, R₁₀, R₁₁, R_A, R_B, R_C, R_D, R_E, R_F, R_G, X₁, X₄, W₁, W₂, W₃, W₄, Z, m, n, p, q are defined in formula (I).

30 In another embodiment, the present invention is directed to compounds of formula (II), wherein L is $-(CH_2)_mX_1(CH_2)_nCH(R_8)C(R_{9A})(R_{9B})X_2(CH_2)_pX_3-$; R_8 is hydrogen; R_{9A} and

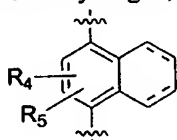
R_{9B} are both hydrogen; and wherein A, B, E, P_1 , P_2 , R_1 , R_2 , R_3 , R_4 , R_5 , R_{9B} , R_{10} , R_{11} , R_A , R_B , R_C , R_D , R_E , R_F , R_G , X_1 , X_2 , X_3 , X_4 , W_1 , W_2 , W_3 , W_4 , Z , m , n , p , q are defined in formula (I).

In another embodiment, the present invention is directed to compounds of formula (II), wherein L is $-(CH_2)_mX_1(CH_2)_nCH(R_8)C(R_{9A})(R_{9B})X_2(CH_2)_pX_3-$; R_8 is hydrogen; R_{9A} and R_{9B} are both hydrogen; X_2 is NR_C ; and wherein A, B, E, P_1 , P_2 , R_1 , R_2 , R_3 , R_4 , R_5 , R_{10} , R_{11} , R_A , R_B , R_C , R_D , R_E , R_F , R_G , X_1 , X_3 , X_4 , W_1 , W_2 , W_3 , W_4 , Z , m , n , p , q are defined in formula (I).

In another embodiment, the present invention is directed to compounds of formula (II), wherein L is $-(CH_2)_mX_1(CH_2)_nCH(R_8)C(R_{9A})(R_{9B})X_2(CH_2)_pX_3-$; R_8 is hydrogen; R_{9A} and R_{9B} are both hydrogen; X_2 is NR_C ; X_3 is O; and wherein A, B, E, P_1 , P_2 , R_1 , R_2 , R_3 , R_4 , R_5 , R_{10} , R_{11} , R_A , R_B , R_C , R_D , R_E , R_F , R_G , X_1 , X_4 , W_1 , W_2 , W_3 , W_4 , Z , m , n , p , q are defined in formula (I).

In another embodiment, the present invention is directed to compounds of formula (II), wherein L is $-(CH_2)_mX_1(CH_2)_nCH(R_8)C(R_{9A})(R_{9B})X_2(CH_2)_pX_3-$; R_8 is hydrogen; R_{9A} and R_{9B} are both hydrogen; X_2 is NR_C ; X_3 is O; B is aryl; and wherein A, E, P_1 , P_2 , R_1 , R_2 , R_3 , R_4 , R_5 , R_{10} , R_{11} , R_A , R_B , R_C , R_D , R_E , R_F , R_G , X_1 , X_4 , W_1 , W_2 , W_3 , W_4 , Z , m , n , p , q are defined in formula (I).

In another embodiment, the present invention is directed to compounds of formula (II), wherein L is $-(CH_2)_mX_1(CH_2)_nCH(R_8)C(R_{9A})(R_{9B})X_2(CH_2)_pX_3-$; R_8 is hydrogen; R_{9A} and R_{9B} are both hydrogen; X_2 is NR_C ; X_3 is O; B is aryl; A is



; and

wherein E, P_1 , P_2 , R_1 , R_2 , R_3 , R_4 , R_5 , R_{10} , R_{11} , R_A , R_B , R_C , R_D , R_E , R_F , R_G , X_1 , X_4 , W_1 , W_2 , W_3 , W_4 , Z , m , n , p , q are defined in formula (I).

In another embodiment, the present invention is directed to compounds of formula (II), wherein L is $-(CH_2)_mX_1(CH_2)_nCH(R_8)C(R_{9A})(R_{9B})X_2(CH_2)_pX_3(CH_2)_qX_4-$; and wherein A, B, E, P_1 , P_2 , R_1 , R_2 , R_3 , R_4 , R_5 , R_8 , R_{9A} , R_{9B} , R_{10} , R_{11} , R_A , R_B , R_C , R_D , R_E , R_F , R_G , X_1 , X_2 , X_3 , X_4 , W_1 , W_2 , W_3 , W_4 , Z , m , n , p , q are defined in formula (I).

In another embodiment, the present invention is directed to compounds of formula (II), wherein L is $-(CH_2)_mX_1(CH_2)_nCH(R_8)C(R_{9A})(R_{9B})X_2(CH_2)_pX_3(CH_2)_qX_4-$; R_8 is NR_AR_B ; and wherein A, B, E, P_1 , P_2 , R_1 , R_2 , R_3 , R_4 , R_5 , R_{9A} , R_{9B} , R_{10} , R_{11} , R_A , R_B , R_C , R_D , R_E , R_F , R_G , X_1 , X_2 , X_3 , X_4 , W_1 , W_2 , W_3 , W_4 , Z , m , n , p , q are defined in formula (I).

In another embodiment, the present invention is directed to compounds of formula (II), wherein L is $-(CH_2)_mX_1(CH_2)_nCH(R_8)C(R_{9A})(R_{9B})X_2(CH_2)_pX_3(CH_2)_qX_4-$; R_8 is NR_AR_B ; R_{9A} and R_{9B} together are oxo; and wherein A, B, E, P_1 , P_2 , R_1 , R_2 , R_3 , R_4 , R_5 , R_{10} , R_{11} , R_A ,

$R_B, R_C, R_D, R_E, R_F, R_G, X_1, X_2, X_3, X_4, W_1, W_2, W_3, W_4, Z, m, n, p, q$ are defined in formula (I).

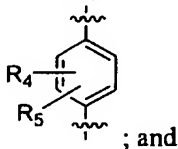
In another embodiment, the present invention is directed to compounds of formula (II), wherein L is $-(CH_2)_mX_1(CH_2)_nCH(R_8)C(R_{9A})(R_{9B})X_2(CH_2)_pX_3(CH_2)_qX_4-$; R_8 is NR_AR_B ; R_{9A} and R_{9B} together are oxo; X_2 is NR_C ; and wherein A, B, E, $P_1, P_2, R_1, R_2, R_3, R_4, R_5, R_{10}, R_{11}, R_A, R_B, R_C, R_D, R_E, R_F, R_G, X_1, X_3, X_4, W_1, W_2, W_3, W_4, Z, m, n, p, q$ are defined in formula (I).

In another embodiment, the present invention is directed to compounds of formula (II), wherein L is $-(CH_2)_mX_1(CH_2)_nCH(R_8)C(R_{9A})(R_{9B})X_2(CH_2)_pX_3(CH_2)_qX_4-$; R_8 is NR_AR_B ; R_{9A} and R_{9B} together are oxo; X_2 is NR_C ; X_3 is O; and wherein A, B, E, $P_1, P_2, R_1, R_2, R_3, R_4, R_5, R_{10}, R_{11}, R_A, R_B, R_C, R_D, R_E, R_F, R_G, X_1, X_4, W_1, W_2, W_3, W_4, Z, m, n, p, q$ are defined in formula (I).

In another embodiment, the present invention is directed to compounds of formula (II), wherein L is $-(CH_2)_mX_1(CH_2)_nCH(R_8)C(R_{9A})(R_{9B})X_2(CH_2)_pX_3(CH_2)_qX_4-$; R_8 is NR_AR_B ; R_{9A} and R_{9B} together are oxo; X_2 is NR_C ; X_3 is O; X_4 is O; and wherein A, B, E, $P_1, P_2, R_1, R_2, R_3, R_4, R_5, R_{10}, R_{11}, R_A, R_B, R_C, R_D, R_E, R_F, R_G, X_1, W_1, W_2, W_3, W_4, Z, m, n, p, q$ are defined in formula (I).

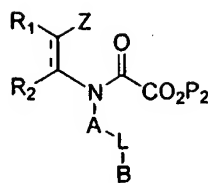
In another embodiment, the present invention is directed to compounds of formula (II), wherein L is $-(CH_2)_mX_1(CH_2)_nCH(R_8)C(R_{9A})(R_{9B})X_2(CH_2)_pX_3(CH_2)_qX_4-$; R_8 is NR_AR_B ; R_{9A} and R_{9B} together are oxo; X_2 is NR_C ; X_3 is O; X_4 is O; B is aryl; and wherein A, E, $P_1, P_2, R_1, R_2, R_3, R_4, R_5, R_{10}, R_{11}, R_A, R_B, R_C, R_D, R_E, R_F, R_G, X_1, W_1, W_2, W_3, W_4, Z, m, n, p, q$ are defined in formula (I).

In another embodiment, the present invention is directed to compounds of formula (II), wherein L is $-(CH_2)_mX_1(CH_2)_nCH(R_8)C(R_{9A})(R_{9B})X_2(CH_2)_pX_3(CH_2)_qX_4-$; R_8 is NR_AR_B ; R_{9A} and R_{9B} together are oxo; X_2 is NR_C ; X_3 is O; X_4 is O; B is aryl; A is



wherein E, $P_1, P_2, R_1, R_2, R_3, R_4, R_5, R_{10}, R_{11}, R_A, R_B, R_C, R_D, R_E, R_F, R_G, X_1, W_1, W_2, W_3, W_4, Z, m, n, p, q$ are defined in formula (I).

According to one embodiment, the present invention is directed to compounds of formula (III)



(III),

or a therapeutically acceptable salt or prodrug thereof wherein A, B, E, L, P₁, P₂, R₁, R₂, R₄, R₅, R₈, R_{9A}, R_{9B}, R₁₀, R₁₁, R_A, R_B, R_C, R_D, R_E, R_F, R_G, X₁, X₂, X₃, X₄, W₁, W₂, W₃, W₄, Z, m, n, p and q are as defined in formula (I).

In another embodiment, the present invention is directed to compounds of formula (III), wherein L is $-(CH_2)_mX_1(CH_2)_nCH(R_8)C(R_{9A})(R_{9B})X_2(CH_2)_pX_3-$; and A, B, P₁, P₂, R₁, R₂, R₄, R₅, R₈, R_{9A}, R_{9B}, R₁₀, R₁₁, R_A, R_B, R_C, R_D, R_E, R_F, R_G, X₁, X₂, X₃, W₁, W₂, W₃, W₄, Z, m, n, p and q are as defined in formula (I).

In another embodiment, the present invention is directed to compounds of formula (III), wherein L is $-(CH_2)_mX_1(CH_2)_nCH(R_8)C(R_{9A})(R_{9B})X_2(CH_2)_pX_3-$; R₈ is NR_AR_B; and A, B, P₁, P₂, R₁, R₂, R₄, R₅, R_{9A}, R_{9B}, R₁₀, R₁₁, R_A, R_B, R_C, R_D, R_E, R_F, R_G, X₁, X₂, X₃, W₁, W₂, W₃, W₄, Z, m, n, p and q are as defined in formula (I).

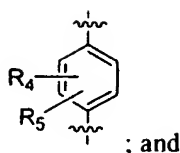
In another embodiment, the present invention is directed to compounds of formula (III), wherein L is $-(CH_2)_mX_1(CH_2)_nCH(R_8)C(R_{9A})(R_{9B})X_2(CH_2)_pX_3-$; R₈ is NR_AR_B; R_{9A} and R_{9B} together are oxo; and A, B, P₁, P₂, R₁, R₂, R₄, R₅, R₁₀, R₁₁, R_A, R_B, R_C, R_D, R_E, R_F, R_G, X₁, X₂, X₃, W₁, W₂, W₃, W₄, Z, m, n, p and q are as defined in formula (I).

In another embodiment, the present invention is directed to compounds of formula (III), wherein L is $-(CH_2)_mX_1(CH_2)_nCH(R_8)C(R_{9A})(R_{9B})X_2(CH_2)_pX_3-$; R₈ is NR_AR_B; R_{9A} and R_{9B} together are oxo; X₂ is NR_C; and A, B, P₁, P₂, R₁, R₂, R₄, R₅, R₁₀, R₁₁, R_A, R_B, R_C, R_D, R_E, R_F, R_G, X₁, X₃, W₁, W₂, W₃, W₄, Z, m, n, p and q are as defined in formula (I).

In another embodiment, the present invention is directed to compounds of formula (III), wherein L is $-(CH_2)_mX_1(CH_2)_nCH(R_8)C(R_{9A})(R_{9B})X_2(CH_2)_pX_3-$; R₈ is NR_AR_B; R_{9A} and R_{9B} together are oxo; X₂ is NR_C; X₃ is O; and A, B, P₁, P₂, R₁, R₂, R₄, R₅, R₁₀, R₁₁, R_A, R_B, R_C, R_D, R_E, R_F, R_G, X₁, W₁, W₂, W₃, W₄, Z, m, n, p and q are as defined in formula (I).

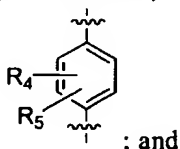
In another embodiment, the present invention is directed to compounds of formula (III), wherein L is $-(CH_2)_mX_1(CH_2)_nCH(R_8)C(R_{9A})(R_{9B})X_2(CH_2)_pX_3-$; R₈ is NR_AR_B; R_{9A} and R_{9B} together are oxo; X₂ is NR_C; X₃ is O; B is aryl; and A, P₁, P₂, R₁, R₂, R₄, R₅, R₁₀, R₁₁, R_A, R_B, R_C, R_D, R_E, R_F, R_G, X₁, W₁, W₂, W₃, W₄, Z, m, n, p and q are as defined in formula (I).

In another embodiment, the present invention is directed to compounds of formula (III), wherein L is $-(CH_2)_mX_1(CH_2)_nCH(R_8)C(R_{9A})(R_{9B})X_2(CH_2)_pX_3-$; R₈ is NR_AR_B; R_{9A} and R_{9B} together are oxo; X₂ is NR_C; X₃ is O; B is aryl; A is



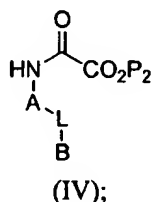
$P_1, P_2, R_1, R_2, R_4, R_5, R_{10}, R_{11}, R_A, R_B, R_C, R_D, R_E, R_F, R_G, X_1, Z, m, n, p$ and q are as defined in formula (I).

- 5 In another embodiment, the present invention is directed to compounds of formula (III), wherein L is $-(CH_2)_mX_1(CH_2)_nCH(R_8)C(R_{9A})(R_{9B})X_2(CH_2)_pX_3-$; R_8 is NR_AR_B ; R_{9A} and R_{9B} together are oxo; X_2 is NR_C ; X_3 is O; B is aryl; A is



- 10 R_1 and R_2 are independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, aryl, arylalkyl, alkoxyalkyl; and $P_1, P_2, R_4, R_5, R_{10}, R_{11}, R_A, R_B, R_C, R_D, R_E, R_F, R_G, X_1, Z, m, n, p$ and q are as defined in formula (I).

According to one embodiment, the present invention is directed to compounds of formula (IV)



- 15 or a therapeutically acceptable salt or prodrug thereof wherein $A, B, L, P_2, R_4, R_5, R_8, R_{9A}, R_{9B}, R_{10}, R_{11}, R_A, R_B, R_C, R_D, R_E, R_F, R_G, X_1, X_2, X_3, X_4, W_1, W_2, W_3, W_4, m, n, p$ and q are as defined in formula (I).

- 20 In another embodiment, the present invention is directed to compounds of formula (IV), wherein L is $-(CH_2)_mX_1(CH_2)_nCH(R_8)C(R_{9A})(R_{9B})X_2(CH_2)_pX_3-$; and $A, B, P_2, R_4, R_5, R_8, R_{9A}, R_{9B}, R_{10}, R_{11}, R_A, R_B, R_C, R_D, R_E, R_F, R_G, X_1, X_2, X_3, W_1, W_2, W_3, W_4, m, n, p$ and q are as defined in formula (I).

- 25 In another embodiment, the present invention is directed to compounds of formula (IV), wherein L is $-(CH_2)_mX_1(CH_2)_nCH(R_8)C(R_{9A})(R_{9B})X_2(CH_2)_pX_3-$; R_8 is NR_AR_B ; and $A, B, P_2, R_4, R_5, R_{9A}, R_{9B}, R_{10}, R_{11}, R_A, R_B, R_C, R_D, R_E, R_F, R_G, X_1, X_2, X_3, W_1, W_2, W_3, W_4, m, n, p$ and q are as defined in formula (I).

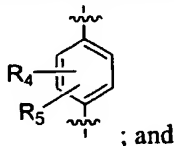
In another embodiment, the present invention is directed to compounds of formula (IV), wherein L is $-(CH_2)_mX_1(CH_2)_nCH(R_8)C(R_{9A})(R_{9B})X_2(CH_2)_pX_3-$; R_8 is NR_AR_B ; R_{9A} and R_{9B} together are oxo; and $A, B, P_2, R_4, R_5, R_{10}, R_{11}, R_A, R_B, R_C, R_D, R_E, R_F, R_G, X_1, X_2, X_3, W_1, W_2, W_3, W_4, m, n, p$ and q are as defined in formula (I).

In another embodiment, the present invention is directed to compounds of formula (IV), wherein L is $-(CH_2)_mX_1(CH_2)_nCH(R_8)C(R_{9A})(R_{9B})X_2(CH_2)_pX_3-$; R_8 is NR_AR_B ; R_{9A} and R_{9B} together are oxo; X_2 is NR_C ; and A, B, P_2 , R_4 , R_5 , R_{10} , R_{11} , R_A , R_B , R_C , R_D , R_E , R_F , R_G , X_1 , X_3 , W_1 , W_2 , W_3 , W_4 , m, n, p and q are as defined in formula (I).

5 In another embodiment, the present invention is directed to compounds of formula (IV), wherein L is $-(CH_2)_mX_1(CH_2)_nCH(R_8)C(R_{9A})(R_{9B})X_2(CH_2)_pX_3-$; R_8 is NR_AR_B ; R_{9A} and R_{9B} together are oxo; X_2 is NR_C ; X_3 is O; and A, B, P_2 , R_4 , R_5 , R_{10} , R_{11} , R_A , R_B , R_C , R_D , R_E , R_F , R_G , X_1 , W_1 , W_2 , W_3 , W_4 , m, n, p and q are as defined in formula (I).

10 In another embodiment, the present invention is directed to compounds of formula (IV), wherein L is $-(CH_2)_mX_1(CH_2)_nCH(R_8)C(R_{9A})(R_{9B})X_2(CH_2)_pX_3-$; R_8 is NR_AR_B ; R_{9A} and R_{9B} together are oxo; X_2 is NR_C ; X_3 is O; B is aryl; and A, P_2 , R_4 , R_5 , R_{10} , R_{11} , R_A , R_B , R_C , R_D , R_E , R_F , R_G , X_1 , W_1 , W_2 , W_3 , W_4 , m, n, p and q are as defined in formula (I).

15 In another embodiment, the present invention is directed to compounds of formula (IV), wherein L is $-(CH_2)_mX_1(CH_2)_nCH(R_8)C(R_{9A})(R_{9B})X_2(CH_2)_pX_3-$; R_8 is NR_AR_B ; R_{9A} and R_{9B} together are oxo; X_2 is NR_C ; X_3 is O; B is aryl; A is



P_2 , R_4 , R_5 , R_{10} , R_{11} , R_A , R_B , R_C , R_D , R_E , R_F , R_G , X_1 , m, n, p and q are as defined in formula (I).

20 According to another embodiment, the present invention is directed to a pharmaceutical composition comprising a therapeutically effective amount of a compound of formula (I-IV) in combination with a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier.

According to another embodiment, the present invention is directed to method of selectively inhibiting protein tyrosine phosphatase 1B comprising administering a therapeutically effective amount of a compound of formula (I-IV).

25 According to another embodiment, the present invention is directed to a method of treating disorders caused by overexpressed or altered protein tyrosine phosphatase 1B comprising administering a therapeutically effective amount of a compound of formula (I-IV).

30 According to another embodiment, the present invention is directed to a method of treating type I and type II diabetes, impaired glucose tolerance and insulin resistance, comprising administering a therapeutically effective amount of a compound of formula (I-IV).

According to another embodiment, the present invention is directed to a method of treating obesity comprising administering a therapeutically effective amount of a compound of formula (I-IV).

5 According to another embodiment, the present invention is directed to a method of treating autoimmune disorders, acute and chronic inflammatory disorders, osteoporosis, cancer, malignant disorders comprising administering a therapeutically effective amount of a compound of formula (I-IV).

Definitions

10 As used throughout the present specification, the following terms have the meanings indicated:

The term "alkenyl," as used herein, refers to a monovalent straight or branched chain hydrocarbon radical having from two to six carbons and at least one carbon-carbon double bond.

15 The term "alkoxy," as used herein, refers to an alkyl group attached to the parent molecular moiety through an oxygen atom.

The term "alkylcarbonyl," refers to an alkyl group attached to the parent molecule through a carbonyl group.

The term "alkoxycarbonyl," as used herein, refers to an alkoxy group attached to the parent molecular moiety through a carbonyl group.

20 The term "alkoxycarbonylalkenyl," as used herein, refers to an alkoxycarbonyl group attached to the parent molecular moiety through an alkenyl group.

The term "alkoxycarbonylalkyl," as used herein, refers to an alkoxycarbonyl group attached to the parent molecular moiety through an alkyl group.

25 The term "alkyl," as used herein, refers to a saturated, monovalent straight or branched chain hydrocarbon having from one to six carbons.

The term "alkylsulfonyl," as used herein, refers to an alkyl group attached to the parent molecular moiety through a sulfonyl group.

30 The term "amino," as used herein, refers to a $-NR_A R_B$, wherein R_A and R_B are independently selected from hydrogen, alkylcarbonyl, alkenyl, alkoxycarbonyl, alkyl, alkylsulfonyl, aryl, arylalkyl, arylalkylcarbonyl, arylcarbonyl, arylsulfonyl, cycloalkyl, (cycloalkyl)alkyl, hydroxyalkyl, a nitrogen protecting group and $R_C R_D N$ carbonyl, wherein R_C and R_D are independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, aryl and arylalkyl; or R_A and R_B taken together with the nitrogen to which they are attached form a ring selected from the group consisting of pyrrolidine, piperidine, morpholine, homopiperidine and piperazine;

35 The term "aminoalkyl," as used herein, refers to an amino group attached to the parent molecular moiety through an alkyl group. The alkyl part of the aminoalkyl can be

optionally substituted with one or two substituents independently selected from carboxy and alkoxy carbonyl;

The term "aminosulfonyl," as used herein, refers to an amino group attached to the parent molecular moiety through a sulfonyl group.

5 The term "aryl," as used herein, refers to a dihydronaphthyl, indanyl, indenyl, naphthyl, phenyl, and tetrahydronaphthyl. Aryl groups having an unsaturated or partially saturated ring fused to an aromatic ring can be attached through the saturated or the unsaturated part of the group. The aryl groups of the present invention can be optionally substituted with one, two, three, four, or five substituents independently selected from the group consisting of alkoxy, alkoxy carbonyl, alkyl, alkylsulfonyl, amino, aminoalkenyl, 10 aminoalkyl, aminosulfonyl, carboxy, carboxyalkenyl, carboxyalkyl, cyano, halo, haloalkyl, haloalkoxy, hydroxy, hydroxyalkyl, nitro, and thioalkoxy. The aryl groups of this invention can be further substituted with an additional aryl group, as defined herein, or an additional heterocycle, as defined herein, wherein the additional aryl group and the additional 15 heterocycle can be substituted with 1, 2 or 3 substituents independently selected from of alkoxy, alkoxy carbonyl, alkyl, alkylsulfonyl, amino, aminoalkenyl, aminoalkyl, aminosulfonyl, carboxy, carboxyalkenyl, carboxyalkyl, cyano, formyl, halo, haloalkyl, haloalkoxy, hydroxy, hydroxyalkyl, nitro, and thioalkoxy.

20 The term "arylalkyl," as used herein, refers to an aryl group attached to the parent molecular moiety through an alkyl group

The term "arylalkylcarbonyl" as used herein, refers to an arylalkyl group attached to the parent molecular moiety through a carbonyl.

The term "arylcabonyl," as used herein refers to an aryl group attached to the parent molecule through a carbonyl group.

25 The term "aryloxy," as used herein, refers to an aryl group attached to the parent molecular moiety through an oxygen atom.

The term "arylsulfonyl," as used herein refers to an aryl group attached to the parent molecule through a sulfonyl group

The term "carbonyl," as used herein, refers to a -C(O)-.

30 The term "carboxy," as used herein, refers to a -CO₂H.

The term "carboxyalkyl," as used herein, refers to a carboxy group attached to the parent molecular moiety through an alkyl group.

The term "cyano," as used herein, refers to a -CN.

35 The term "cycloalkenyl," as used herein, refers to a monovalent cyclic or bicyclic hydrocarbon of four to twelve carbons having at least one carbon-carbon double bond.

The term "(cycloalkenyl)alkyl," as used herein, refers to a cycloalkenyl group attached to the parent molecular moiety through an alkyl group.

The term "cycloalkyl," as used herein, refers to a monovalent saturated cyclic or bicyclic hydrocarbon group of three to twelve carbons. The cycloalkyl groups of the invention can be optionally substituted with one, two, three, or four substituents independently selected from the group consisting of alkylcarbonyl, alkoxy, alkoxycarbonyl, alkyl, carboxy, halo and hydroxy.

The term "(cycloalkyl)alkyl," as used herein, refers to a cycloalkyl group attached to the parent molecular moiety through an alkyl group.

The term "formyl" refers to a -C(O)H group.

The term "halo," refers to an F, Cl, Br, or I.

The term "haloalkyl," refers to a halo group attached to the parent molecular moiety through an alkyl group.

The term "haloalkoxy" refers to a haloalkyl group attached to the parent molecule through an alkoxy group.

The term "heteroaryl," as used herein, refers to a cyclic, aromatic groups having five or six atoms, wherein at least one atom is selected from the group consisting of nitrogen, oxygen, and sulfur, and the remaining atoms are carbon. The five-membered rings have two double bonds, and the six-membered rings have three double bonds. Heteroaryls of the invention are exemplified by furanyl, thienyl, pyrrolyl, oxazolyl, thiazolyl, imidazolyl, isoxazolyl, isothiazolyl, oxadiazolyl, oxadiazolyl, triazolyl, thiadiazolyl, pyridyl, pyridazinyl, pyrimidinyl, pyrazinyl, pyrazolyl, triazinyl, and the like. The heteroaryl groups of the present invention are connected to the parent molecular group through a carbon atom in the ring or, as exemplified by imidazole, indole, and pyrazole, through either a carbon atom or nitrogen atom in the ring. The heteroaryl groups of the invention can also be fused to a second ring selected from the group consisting of aryl, heteroaryl and heterocycloalkyl in which case the heteroaryl group can be connected to the parent molecular group through either the aryl part, the heteroaryl part or the heterocycloalkyl part of the fused ring system. Heteroaryl groups of this type are exemplified by quinolinyl, isoquinolinyl, benzofuranyl, benzothiophenyl, benzoisoxazolyl, benzthiazolyl, benzooxazolyl, indolyl, thienopyrazinyl, thienylfuranyl, thienylpyridinyl, 2,3-dihydrothienofuranyl, and the like. The heteroaryl groups of this invention can be optionally substituted with one, two, or three substituents independently selected from the group consisting of alkoxy, alkoxycarbonyl, alkyl, alkylsufonyl, amino, aminoalkenyl, aminoalkyl, aminosulfonyl, carboxy, carboxyalkenyl, carboxyalkyl, cyano, halo, haloalkyl, haloalkoxy, hydroxy, hydroxyalkyl, nitro, and thioalkoxy.

The term "heteroarylalkyl," as used herein, refers to a heteroaryl group attached to the parent molecular moiety through an alkyl group.

The term "heterocycloalkyl," as used herein, refers to a cyclic, non-aromatic, four, five, or six membered ring containing at least one atom selected from the group consisting of

oxygen, nitrogen, and sulfur. The four-membered rings have zero double bonds, the five-membered rings have zero or one double bonds, and the six-membered rings have zero, one, or two double bonds. Heterocycloalkyl groups of the invention are exemplified by dihydropyridinyl, imidazoliny, morpholinyl, piperazinyl, pyrrolidinyl, pyrazolidinyl, 5 tetrahydropyridinyl, piperidinyl, thiomorpholinyl, 1,3-dioxolanyl, 1,4-dioxanyl, 1,3-dioxanyl, and the like. The heterocycloalkyls of the present invention can be attached to the parent molecular group through a carbon atom or nitrogen atom in the ring. The heterocycloalkyl groups of the invention can also be fused to a aryl ring, in which case the heterocycloalkyl group can be connected to the parent molecular group through either the heterocycloalkyl 10 part or the aryl part of the fused ring system. Heterocycloalkyl groups of this type are exemplified by benzodioxolyl, indolinyl, tetrahydroquinolinyl, chromanyl, and the like. The heterocycloalkyl groups of this invention can be optionally substituted one, two, three, four or five substituents independently selected from the group consisting of alkoxy, alkoxy carbonyl, alkyl, alkylsufonyl, amino, aminoalkenyl, aminoalkyl, aminosulfonyl, 15 carboxy, carboxyalkenyl, carboxyalkyl, cyano, halo, haloalkyl, haloalkoxy, hydroxy, hydroxyalkyl, nitro, and thioalkoxy.

The term "(heterocycloalkyl)alkyl," as used herein, refers to a heterocycloalkyl group attached to the parent molecular moiety through an alkyl group.

The term "hydroxy," as used herein, refers to an -OH.

20 The term "hydroxyalkyl," as used herein, refers to a hydroxy group attached the parent molecular moiety through an alkyl group.

The term "inhibitor" as used herein, refers to a compound which prevents the binding of PTP1B to its endogenous substrates or prevents the dephosphorylation mediated by PTP1B on its endogenous substrate, including but not limited to insulin receptor tyrosine 25 kinase (IRTK), and the fragments of IRTK, and the unnatural substrates, such as p-nitrophenyl phosphate.

The term "nitro," as used herein, refers to a -NO₂.

The term "nitrogen protecting group," as used herein, refers to a selectively 30 introducible and removable groups which protect amino groups against undesirable side reactions during synthetic procedures. Examples of amino protecting groups include methoxycarbonyl, ethoxycarbonyl, trichloroethoxycarbonyl, benzyloxycarbonyl (Cbz), chloroacetyl, trifluoroacetyl, phenylacetyl, formyl, acetyl, benzoyl, tert-butoxycarbonyl (Boc), para-methoxybenzyloxycarbonyl, isopropoxycarbonyl, phthaloyl, succinyl, benzyl, diphenylmethyl, triphenylmethyl (trityl), methylsulfonyl, phenylsulfonyl, para- 35 toluenesulfonyl, trimethylsilyl, triethylsilyl, triphenylsilyl, and the like.

The term "oxo," as used herein, refers to a =O.

The term "perfluoroalkoxy," as used herein, refers to a perfluoroalkyl group attached to the parent molecular moiety through an oxygen atom.

The term "perfluoroalkyl," as used herein, refers to an alkyl group in which all of the hydrogen atoms have been replaced with fluoride atoms.

5 The term "phenyl," as used herein, refers to a 6 membered aromatic ring that is unsubstituted.

 The term "selective," as used herein, refers to a compound having at least 3 fold greater affinity in terms of K_{ic} value for the PTP1B receptor compared with the K_{ic} value of other receptors, including but not limited to, TC-PTP, SHP-2, LAR, CD45, PP2B and
10 Cdc25c.

 The term "sulfonyl," as used herein, refers to a $-SO_2-$.

 The term "thioalkoxy," as used herein, refers to an alkyl group attached to the parent molecular moiety through a sulfur atom.

 The present compounds can exist as therapeutically acceptable salts. The term
15 "therapeutically acceptable salt," refers to salts or zwitterions of the compounds which are water or oil-soluble or dispersible, suitable for treatment of disorders without undue toxicity, irritation, and allergic response, commensurate with a reasonable benefit/risk ratio, and effective for their intended use. The salts can be prepared during the final isolation and purification of the compounds or separately by reacting an amino group of the compounds
20 with a suitable acid. Representative salts include acetate, adipate, alginate, citrate, aspartate, benzoate, benzenesulfonate, bisulfate, butyrate, camphorate, camphorsulfonate, digluconate, glycerophosphate, hemisulfate, heptanoate, hexanoate, formate, isethionate, fumarate, lactate, maleate, methanesulfonate, naphthylenesulfonate, nicotinate, oxalate, pamoate, pectinate, persulfate, 3-phenylpropionate, picrate, oxalate, maleate, pivalate, propionate, succinate,
25 tartrate, trichloroacetic, trifluoroacetic, glutamate, para-toluenesulfonate, undecanoate, hydrochloric, hydrobromic, sulfuric, phosphoric, and the like. The amino groups of the compounds can also be quaternized with alkyl chlorides, bromides, and iodides such as methyl, ethyl, propyl, isopropyl, butyl, lauryl, myristyl, stearyl, and the like.

 Basic addition salts can be prepared during the final isolation and purification of the
30 present compounds by reaction of a carboxyl group with a suitable base such as the hydroxide, carbonate, or bicarbonate of a metal cation such as lithium, sodium, potassium, calcium, magnesium, or aluminum, or an organic primary, secondary, or tertiary amine. Quaternary amine salts derived from methylamine, dimethylamine, trimethylamine, triethylamine, diethylamine, ethylamine, tributylamine, pyridine, N,N-dimethylaniline, N-methylpiperidine, N-methylmorpholine, dicyclohexylamine, procaine, dibenzylamine, N,N-
35 dibenzylphenethylamine, 1-phenamine, and N,N'-dibenzylethylenediamine,

ethylenediamine, ethanolamine, diethanolamine, piperidine, piperazine, and the like, are contemplated as being within the scope of the present invention.

The present compounds can also exist as therapeutically acceptable prodrugs. The term "therapeutically acceptable prodrug," refers to those prodrugs or zwitterions which are
5 suitable for use in contact with the tissues of patients without undue toxicity, irritation, and allergic response, are commensurate with a reasonable benefit/risk ratio, and are effective for their intended use. The term "prodrug," refers to compounds which are rapidly transformed *in vivo* to the parent compounds of formula (I) for example, by hydrolysis in blood.

Asymmetric centers can exist in the present compounds. Individual stereoisomers of
10 the compounds are prepared by synthesis from chiral starting materials or by preparation of racemic mixtures and separation by conversion to a mixture of diastereomers followed by separation or recrystallization, chromatographic techniques, or direct separation of the enantiomers on chiral chromatographic columns. Starting materials of particular stereochemistry are either commercially available or are made by the methods described
15 hereinbelow and resolved by techniques well-known in the art.

Geometric isomers can exist in the present compounds. The invention contemplates the various geometric isomers and mixtures thereof resulting from the disposal of substituents around a carbon-carbon double bond, a cycloalkyl group, or a heterocycloalkyl group. Substituents around a carbon-carbon double bond are designated as being of Z or E
20 configuration and substituents around a cycloalkyl or heterocycloalkyl are designated as being of cis or trans configuration.

Therapeutic compositions of the present compounds comprise an effective amount of the same formulated with one or more therapeutically acceptable excipients. The term
25 "therapeutically acceptable excipient," as used herein, represents a non-toxic, solid, semi-solid or liquid filler, diluent, encapsulating material, or formulation auxiliary of any type. Examples of therapeutically acceptable excipients include sugars; cellulose and derivatives thereof; oils; glycols; solutions; buffering, coloring, releasing, coating, sweetening, flavoring, and perfuming agents; and the like. These therapeutic compositions can be administered parenterally, intracisternally, orally, rectally, or intraperitoneally.

30 Liquid dosage forms for oral administration of the present compounds comprise formulations of the same as emulsions, microemulsions, solutions, suspensions, syrups, and elixirs. In addition to the compounds, the liquid dosage forms can contain diluents and/or solubilizing or emulsifying agents. Besides inert diluents, the oral compositions can include wetting, emulsifying, sweetening, flavoring, and perfuming agents.

35 Injectable preparations of the present compounds comprise sterile, injectable, aqueous and oleaginous solutions, suspensions or emulsions, any of which can be optionally formulated with parenterally acceptable diluents, dispersing, wetting, or suspending agents. These

injectable preparations can be sterilized by filtration through a bacterial-retaining filter or formulated with sterilizing agents which dissolve or disperse in the injectable media. PTP inhibition by the present compounds can be delayed by using a liquid suspension of crystalline or amorphous material with poor water solubility. The rate of absorption of the compounds depends upon their rate of dissolution which, in turn, depends on their crystallinity. Delayed absorption of a parenterally administered compound can be accomplished by dissolving or suspending the compound in oil. Injectable depot forms of the compounds can also be prepared by microencapsulating the same in biodegradable polymers. Depending upon the ratio of compound to polymer and the nature of the polymer employed, the rate of release can be controlled. Depot injectable formulations are also prepared by entrapping the compounds in liposomes or microemulsions which are compatible with body tissues.

Solid dosage forms for oral administration of the present compounds include capsules, tablets, pills, powders, and granules. In such forms, the compound is mixed with at least one inert, therapeutically acceptable excipient such as a carrier, filler, extender, disintegrating agent, solution retarding agent, wetting agent, absorbent, or lubricant. With capsules, tablets, and pills, the excipient can also contain buffering agents. Suppositories for rectal administration can be prepared by mixing the compounds with a suitable non-irritating excipient which is solid at ordinary temperature but fluid in the rectum.

The present compounds can be micro-encapsulated with one or more of the excipients discussed previously. The solid dosage forms of tablets, dragees, capsules, pills, and granules can be prepared with coatings and shells such as enteric and release-controlling. In these forms, the compounds can be mixed with at least one inert diluent and can optionally comprise tableting lubricants and aids. Capsules can also optionally contain opacifying agents which delay release of the compounds in a desired part of the intestinal tract.

Transdermal patches have the added advantage of providing controlled delivery of the present compounds to the body. Such dosage forms are prepared by dissolving or dispensing the compounds in the proper medium. Absorption enhancers can also be used to increase the flux of the compounds across the skin, and the rate of absorption can be controlled by providing a rate controlling membrane or by dispersing the compounds in a polymer matrix or gel.

Disorders caused or exacerbated by protein tyrosine phosphatase PTP1B activity are treated or prevented in a patient by administering to the same a therapeutically effective amount of the present compounds in such an amount and for such time as is necessary to achieve the desired result. The term "therapeutically effective amount," refers to a sufficient amount of the compound to treat protein tyrosine phosphatase PTP1B activity at a reasonable benefit/risk ratio applicable to any medical treatment. The specific therapeutically effective

dose level for any particular patient will depend upon a variety of factors including the disorder being treated and the severity of the disorder; the activity of the compound employed; the specific composition employed; the age, body weight, general health, sex, and diet of the patient; the time of administration, route of administration, rate of excretion; the duration of the treatment; and drugs used in combination or coincidental therapy.

The total daily dose of the present compounds in single or divided doses can be in amounts, for example, from 0.01 to 50 mg/kg body weight or more usually from 0.1 to 25 mg/kg body weight. Single dose compositions can contain such amounts or submultiples thereof of the compounds to make up the daily dose. In general, treatment regimens comprise administration to a patient in need of such treatment from about 10 mg to about 1000 mg of the compounds per day in single or multiple doses.

Specific compounds of formula (II) include, but are not limited to:

N-[5-({*N*-acetyl-4-[(carboxycarbonyl)(2-carboxyphenyl)amino]-3-ethylphenylalanyl}amino)pentanoyl]-L-tyrosine;

N-{5-[(*N*-acetyl-4-[(carboxycarbonyl)(2-carboxyphenyl)amino]-3-ethylphenylalanyl)amino]pentanoyl}-*S*-benzyl-L-cysteine;

N-{5-[(*N*-acetyl-4-[(carboxycarbonyl)(2-carboxyphenyl)amino]-3-ethylphenylalanyl)amino]pentanoyl}-L-methionine;

methyl *N*-{5-[(*N*-acetyl-4-[(carboxycarbonyl)(2-carboxyphenyl)amino]-3-ethylphenylalanyl)amino]pentanoyl}-L-methioninate;

N-{5-[(*N*-acetyl-4-[(carboxycarbonyl)(2-carboxyphenyl)amino]-3-ethylphenylalanyl)amino]pentanoyl}-*S*-ethyl-L-homocysteine;

N-[5-({*N*-acetyl-4-[(carboxycarbonyl)(2-carboxyphenyl)amino]-3-ethylphenylalanyl}amino)pentanoyl]-L-norleucine;

N-{5-[{3-(4-[(carboxycarbonyl)(2-carboxyphenyl)amino]-1-naphthyl)-*N*-(methoxycarbonyl)alanyl}amino]pentanoyl}-L-methionine;

N-{5-[(*N*-acetyl-4-[(carboxycarbonyl)(2-carboxyphenyl)amino]-3-isopropylphenylalanyl)amino]pentanoyl}-L-methionine;

N-{5-[(*N*-acetyl-4-[(carboxycarbonyl)(2-carboxy-5-chlorophenyl)amino]-3-ethylphenylalanyl)amino]pentanoyl}-L-methionine;

N-{5-[(*N*-acetyl-4-[(carboxycarbonyl)(2-carboxyphenyl)amino]-3-(2-hydroxyethyl)phenylalanyl)amino]pentanoyl}-L-methionine;

N-{4-({[*N*-acetyl-4-[(carboxycarbonyl)(2-carboxyphenyl)amino]-3-(2-hydroxyethyl)phenylalanyl]amino)methyl)cyclohexylcarbonyl}-L-norleucine;

methyl 2-[4-({*N*-[(allyloxy)carbonyl]-4-[(carboxycarbonyl)(2-carboxyphenyl)amino]-L-phenylalanyl)amino)butoxy]-6-hydroxybenzoate;

- methyl 2-{4-[(*N*-acetyl-4-[(carboxycarbonyl)(2-carboxyphenyl)amino]-3-ethylphenylalanyl)amino]butoxy}-6-hydroxybenzoate;
- methyl 2-{2-[2-(*N*-[(allyloxy)carbonyl]-4-[(carboxycarbonyl)(2-carboxyphenyl)amino]-*L*-phenylalanyl)amino)ethoxy]ethoxy}-6-hydroxybenzoate;
- 5 methyl 2-[(5-{*N*-acetyl-3-(4-amino-1-naphthyl)-*L*-alanyl)amino}pentyl)oxy]-6-hydroxy-4-methylbenzoate;
- methyl 4-{4-[(*N*-acetyl-4-amino-3-ethylphenylalanyl)amino]butoxy}-2-hydroxy-1,1'-biphenyl-3-carboxylate;
- 2-[4-({*N*-acetyl-4-[(carboxycarbonyl)(2-carboxyphenyl)amino]-3-ethylphenylalanyl)amino]butoxy}-6-hydroxybenzoic acid;
- 10 3-({5-[(*N*-acetyl-3-{4-[(carboxycarbonyl)(2-carboxyphenyl)amino]-1-naphthyl}-*L*-alanyl)amino]pentyl)oxy)-2-naphthoic acid;
- methyl 6-{4-[(*N*-acetyl-4-[(carboxycarbonyl)(2-carboxyphenyl)amino]-3-ethylphenylalanyl)amino]butoxy}-3-bromo-2-hydroxybenzoate;
- 15 2-[(carboxycarbonyl){4-[3-(4-[3-hydroxy-2-(methoxycarbonyl)phenoxy]butyl)amino]-3-oxopropyl]-[(carboxycarbonyl)(2-carboxyphenyl)amino]-1-naphthyl}amino]benzoic acid;
- methyl 2-(4-{4-[(carboxycarbonyl)(2-carboxyphenyl)amino]-*N*-(methoxycarbonyl)-*L*-phenylalanyl)amino}butoxy)-6-hydroxy-4-pentylbenzoate;
- 20 methyl 2-(4-{4-[(carboxycarbonyl)(2-carboxyphenyl)amino]-*N*-(methoxycarbonyl)-*L*-phenylalanyl)amino}butoxy)-6-hydroxy-4-methoxybenzoate;
- methyl 3-(4-{4-[(carboxycarbonyl)(2-carboxyphenyl)amino]-*N*-(methoxycarbonyl)-*L*-phenylalanyl)amino}butoxy)-5-hydroxy-1,1'-biphenyl-4-carboxylate;
- methyl 2-(4-{4-[(carboxycarbonyl)(2-carboxyphenyl)amino]-*N*-(methoxycarbonyl)-*L*-phenylalanyl)amino}butoxy)-6-hydroxy-4-methylbenzoate;
- 25 methyl 2-(4-{3-(4-[(carboxycarbonyl)(2-carboxyphenyl)amino]-3-ethylphenyl)propanoyl}amino}butoxy)-6-hydroxybenzoate;
- methyl 2-(4-{4-[(carboxycarbonyl)(2-carboxyphenyl)amino]-*N*-(methoxycarbonyl)-*L*-phenylalanyl)amino}butoxy)-4-chloro-6-hydroxybenzoate;
- 30 methyl 2-(4-{4-[(carboxycarbonyl)(2-carboxyphenyl)amino]-*N*-(methoxycarbonyl)-*L*-phenylalanyl)amino}butoxy)-6-hydroxybenzoate;
- 4-[(carboxycarbonyl)(2-carboxyphenyl)amino]-*N*-(4-[2-(aminocarbonyl)-3-hydroxyphenoxy]butyl)-*N*-(methoxycarbonyl)-*L*-phenylalaninamide;
- methyl 3-(4-{4-[(carboxycarbonyl)(2-carboxyphenyl)amino]-*N*-(methoxycarbonyl)-*L*-phenylalanyl)amino}butoxy)-1-hydroxy-2-naphthoate;
- 35 4-[(carboxycarbonyl)(2-carboxyphenyl)amino]-*N*-(4-{3-hydroxy-2-[(methylamino)carbonyl]phenoxy}butyl)-*N*-(methoxycarbonyl)-*L*-phenylalaninamide;

- methyl 2-(4-{{3-(4-[(carboxycarbonyl)(2-carboxyphenyl)amino]-1-naphthyl)-1-methylpropyl}amino}butoxy)-6-hydroxybenzoate;
 methyl 2-(4-{{3-(4-[(carboxycarbonyl)(2-carboxyphenyl)amino]-1-naphthyl)propyl}amino}butoxy)-6-hydroxybenzoate;
 5 4-[(carboxycarbonyl)(2-carboxyphenyl)amino]-*N*-(4-{2-[(ethylamino)carbonyl]-3-hydroxyphenoxy}butyl)-*N*-(methoxycarbonyl)-*L*-phenylalaninamide;
N-{4-[2-(acetylamino)-3-hydroxyphenoxy]butyl}-4-[(carboxycarbonyl)(2-carboxyphenyl)amino]-*N*-(methoxycarbonyl)-*L*-phenylalaninamide;
 4-[(carboxycarbonyl)(2-carboxyphenyl)amino]-*N*-(4-{2-[(dimethylamino)carbonyl]-3-hydroxyphenoxy}butyl)-*N*-(methoxycarbonyl)-*L*-phenylalaninamide;
 10 methyl 2-(4-{{*N*-(*tert*-butoxycarbonyl)-4-[(2-carboxybutyl)(carboxycarbonyl)amino]phenylalanyl}amino}butoxy)-6-hydroxybenzoate;
 methyl 2-(4-{{*N*-(*tert*-butoxycarbonyl)-4-[(carboxycarbonyl)(2-carboxy-3-phenylpropyl)amino]phenylalanyl}amino}butoxy)-6-hydroxybenzoate;
 15 methyl 2-(4-{{*N*-(*tert*-butoxycarbonyl)-4-[(carboxycarbonyl)(2-carboxy-2-phenylethyl)amino]phenylalanyl}amino}butoxy)-6-hydroxybenzoate;
 methyl 2-(4-{{*N*-(*tert*-butoxycarbonyl)-4-[(carboxycarbonyl)(2-carboxy-4-methoxybutyl)amino]phenylalanyl}amino}butoxy)-6-hydroxybenzoate;
 methyl 2-(4-{{*N*-(*tert*-butoxycarbonyl)-4-[(carboxycarbonyl)(2-carboxy-2-4-hydroxyphenyl)ethyl]amino}phenylalanyl}amino}butoxy)-6-hydroxybenzoate;
 20 methyl 2-(4-{{*N*-(*tert*-butoxycarbonyl)-4-[(carboxycarbonyl)(2-carboxy-3-(4-hydroxy-3-methoxyphenyl)propyl)amino]phenylalanyl}amino}butoxy)-6-hydroxybenzoate;
 methyl 2-(4-{{*N*-(*tert*-butoxycarbonyl)-4-[(carboxycarbonyl)(2-carboxypentyl)amino]-*L*-phenylalanyl}amino}butoxy)-6-hydroxybenzoate;
 25 methyl 2-(4-{{*N*-(*tert*-butoxycarbonyl)-4-[(carboxycarbonyl)[1-(carboxymethyl)propyl]amino}-*L*-phenylalanyl}amino}butoxy)-6-hydroxybenzoate;
 methyl 2-(4-{{*N*-(*tert*-butoxycarbonyl)-4-[(carboxycarbonyl)(2-carboxypropyl)amino]-*L*-phenylalanyl}amino}butoxy)-6-hydroxybenzoate;
 methyl 2-(4-{{4-(carboxycarbonyl)amino}-*N*-(*tert*-
 30 butoxycarbonyl)phenylalanyl}amino}butoxy)-6-hydroxybenzoate;
 benzyl 2-(4-{{4-(carboxycarbonyl)amino}-*N*-(*tert*-butoxycarbonyl)phenylalanyl}amino}butoxy)-6-hydroxybenzoate;
 2-(4-{{4-(carboxycarbonyl)amino}-*N*-(*tert*-butoxycarbonyl)-*L*-phenylalanyl}amino}butoxy)-6-hydroxybenzoic acid;
 2-(4-{{4-[(carboxycarbonyl)amino]-*N*-(methoxycarbonyl)-*L*-
 35 phenylalanyl}amino}butoxy)-6-hydroxybenzoic acid;

methyl 2-(4- {[4-(carboxycarbonyl)amino]-amino-*N*-(methoxycarbonyl)-L-phenylalanyl]amino} butoxy)-6-hydroxybenzoate;
 4-[(carboxycarbonyl)amino]-*N*-[4-(3-hydroxy-2-nitrophenoxy)butyl]-*N*-(methoxycarbonyl)-L-phenylalaninamide;
 5 benzyl 2-(4- {[4-(carboxycarbonyl)amino]-*N*-(methoxycarbonyl)-L-phenylalanyl]amino} butoxy)-6-hydroxybenzoate;
 2-[(carboxycarbonyl)amino]-5-[3-({4-[3-hydroxy-2-(methoxycarbonyl)phenoxy]butyl} amino)-3-oxopropyl]benzoic acid; and
N-{4-[2-(acetylamino)-3-hydroxyphenoxy]butyl}-4-[(carboxycarbonyl)amino]-
 10 amino-*N*-(methoxycarbonyl)-L-phenylalaninamide.

Determination of Biological Activity

A panel of different phosphatases is selected for assaying the different inhibitory activities exhibited by the claimed compounds. These phosphatases are selected on the basis
 15 of their homology to PTP1B, from the most homologous one, such as TCPTP, the moderate homologous phosphatase, such as SHP-2 and LAR, to the least homologous ones, such as cdc25c, CD45 and PP2B.

Purification of Human protein tyrosine phosphatase 1B from *E. coli*.

20 Human protein tyrosine phosphatase 1B (PTP1B, amino acid residues 1-321) was expressed in *E. coli* BL21(DE3). The cell paste was resuspended in 4 cell paste volumes of lysis buffer containing 100 mM MES (pH 6.5), 100 mM NaCl, 1 mM EDTA, 1 mM DTT, 1 mM PMSF, 20 U/mL Benzonase, 0.5 mg/mL lysozyme, and 1 mM MgCl₂ and incubated for 35 minutes at room temperature. The cells were lysed at 11,000 psi using a Rannie
 25 homogenizer, and the homogenate was clarified in a Beckman GSA rotor at 10,000 × g for 30 minutes at 4 °C. The supernatant was loaded onto a 5 × 21 cm S-Sepharose-FF column (Amersham Pharmacia Biotech) pre-equilibrated with 5 column volumes of buffer containing 100 mM MES (pH 6.5), 100 mM NaCl, 1 mM EDTA, and 1 mM DTT. After sample application, the column was washed with 10 column volume (CV) of the same buffer, PTP1B
 30 was eluted with a 20 CV linear gradient of 100 mM to 500 mM NaCl in the same buffer. The fractions (28 mL each) were assayed for purity by 10-20% Tris-Glycine SDS-PAGE. Fractions which contained >95% protein tyrosine phosphatase 1B were combined. These fractions were concentrated to approximately 10 mg/mL by ultrafiltration and chromatographed on a 180mL (1.6cm x 90 cm) Superdex 75 column in 10 mM TRIS-HCl,
 35 pH 7.5, 25 mM NaCl, 0.2 mM EDTA, 3 mM DTT. The fractions (2 mL each) were assayed for purity by 10-20% Tris-Glycine SDS-PAGE. Fractions which contained >99% protein

tyrosine phosphatase 1B were combined. Aliquots were frozen in liquid N₂ and stored at –70C until used. Once thawed, PTP1B was stored on ice and used within 6 hours.

Inhibition Constant Determination for Protein Tyrosine Phosphatase 1B:

5 Protein tyrosine phosphatase 1B activity was determined by measuring the rate of hydrolysis of a surrogate substrate, *p*-nitrophenyl phosphate (aka pNPP, C1907 Sigma, St. Louis, MO). The assay was carried out at room temperature in 96 well polypropylene or polyethylene plates in a total volume of 100 μ L per well. Appropriate dilutions of the compounds were made in DMSO and then diluted ten fold with water. 10 μ L of 5
10 concentrations of the test compound (inhibitor) or 10% DMSO in water were added to individual wells containing 40 μ L of 3.2, 8, 20, and 50 mM pNPP in water. The reaction was initiated by adding 50 μ L of diluted PTP1B diluted in 2x assay buffer containing 50 mM HEPES (pH=7.5), 300 mM NaCl and 0.2 mg/mL BSA. The phosphatase activity results in
15 the formation of the colored product *p*-nitrophenol (pNP) which was continuously monitored at 405nm every 30 seconds for 15 minutes using an appropriate plate reader. The absorbance at 405nm was converted to nanomoles of pNP using a standard curve and the initial rate of pNP formation was calculated. For each concentration of test compound (inhibitor) or DMSO control, the initial rates are used to fit the rectangular hyperbola of Michaelis-Menten
20 by non-linear regression analysis (GraphPad Software Prism 3.0). The ratio of the apparent K_m/V_{max} vs. inhibitor concentration was plotted and the competitive K_i was calculated by linear regression to be the negative x-intercept. The uncompetitive K_i was similarly calculated from the x-intercept of the plot of the reciprocal of the apparent V_{max} versus the inhibitor concentration. (Cornish-Bowden, A. 1995. Fundamentals of Enzyme Kinetics. Revised edition. Portland Press, Ltd., London, U.K.).

25

Sources of Other Phosphates Used in the Selectivity Panel:

TCPTP used was either obtained commercially (catalog#752L New England Biolabs, 32 Tozer Rd, Beverly, MA) or as described for PTP1B. The purification of TCPTP differed from the purification of PTP1b in that chromatography of TCPTP (amino acid residues 1-
30 283) was on Q-Sepharose-FF (Amersham Pharmacia Biotech) in 50 mM TRIS-HCl, pH 7.5, 2 mM DTT, 10% (v/v) glycerol, and was eluted with a 3CV gradient of 0-300 mM NaCl in the same buffer. Fractions which contained TCPTP were selected and pooled based on SDS-PAGE. They were dialyzed versus 40 mM sodium phosphate, pH 7.5, 1 M ammonium sulfate, 10 % (v/v) glycerol, 2 mM DTT, 1 mM sodium azide, applied to Phenyl Sepharose
35 FF (Amersham Pharmacia Biotech), washed with 2.5 CV of the same buffer, and eluted with a 7 CV gradient of 1M to 0M NaCl in the same buffer. Fractions were assayed, pooled, frozen and stored as described for PTP1B.

SHP-2 (full length) was expressed in from *E. coli* and was purified as described for PTP-1B. Cells were lysed with a French press following by centrifugation to remove debris. Proteins were precipitated with 50% saturated ammonium sulfate, recovered by centrifugation, and chromatographed on Sephadex G-25 (Amersham Pharmacia Biotech) in 50 mM Tris-HCl pH 8, 10 mM NaCl, 1 mM DTT, 1 mM EDTA. The void volume was pooled and chromatographed on Q-Sepharose-FF in the same buffer, and SHP-2 was eluted with a 0-150 mM gradient of NaCl in the same buffer. Fractions were assayed, pooled and stored as described for PTP1B.

CDC25c was expressed as a fusion with glutathione-S- transferase (aka GST) in *E. coli*. Cells were lysed and debris removed as described for SHP-2, except lysis was in PBS (GibcoBRL Life Technologies, Grand Island, NY, Stock # 70011-044, diluted 10-fold). The soluble proteins were chromatographed on Glutathione-Sepharose FF (Amersham Pharmacia Biotech) and eluted with 10 mM reduced glutathione in 25 mM TRIS-HCl, pH 7.5, 150 mM NaCl. Fractions were assayed, pooled and stored as described for PTP1B.

CD45 was obtained commercially (catalog#SE-135 Biomol Research Laboratories, Inc. 5120 Butler Pike, Plymouth Meeting, PA).

LAR was obtained commercially (catalog#P0750L New England Biolabs, 32 Tozer Rd, Beverly, MA).

Bovine PP2B was obtained commercially (C1907 Sigma, St. Louis, MO).

Inhibition Constant Determination for Other Phosphatases in the Selectivity Panel:

The K_{ic} and K_{iu} values are calculated as described for PTP1B. The assays were performed as described for PTP-1B except for the following changes. All the phosphatases except PP2B use the same 2x assay buffer as PTP1B. PP2B uses a 2x assay buffer which contains 100 mM TRIS-HCl pH 8.6, 40 mM MgCl₂, 0.2 mM CaCl₂, 6 mM DTT, 0.2 mg/mL BSA. The concentrations of pNPP present in 40 ul were the same for TCPTP, CD45, LAR and PTP1B. For PP2B they were 24 mM, 60 mM, 150mM, and 375 mM; for cdc25C they were 16 mM, 40 mM, 100mM, and 250 mM; for SHP-2 they were 6.4 mM, 16 mM, 40mM, and 100 mM.

Table 1: Phosphatase Inhibition Constants (K_{ic})

Compound of Example #	PTP1B	TC-PTP	SHP-2	LAR	CD45	PP2B	Cdc25c
3	0.077+/- 0.012	0.38 +/- 0.080	17	5.0	>200	>200	>200
13	0.016+/-0.003	0.57+/-0.012	14.2	4.6	>200	>200	>200
36	1.3+/- 0.2	7.9 +/- 2.0	-	-	-	-	-
43	1.3	9.3	-	-	-	-	-
45	8.8	141	-	-	-	-	-
52	2.7	38.2	-	-	-	-	-

(K_{ic} expressed in μM +/-S.D.)

The results shown in Table 1, demonstrate that compounds of Example 3 and 13 are at least 3 fold selective for PTP1B over the most homologous phosphatase, TCPTP, are 50 fold selective for PTP1B over SHP-2 and LAR, and are 2,000 fold selective for PTP1B over CD45, PP2B and Cdc25C. Moreover the compounds of the present invention were found to inhibit protein tyrosine phosphatase 1B with inhibitory constants in a range of about 0.005 μM to about 10 μM . In a preferred range, the compounds inhibited protein tyrosine phosphatase 1B with inhibitory constants in a range of about of about 0.005 μM to about 1 μM ; and in a more preferred range, the compounds inhibited protein tyrosine phosphatase 1B with inhibitory constants in a range of about of about 0.005 μM to about 0.5 μM .

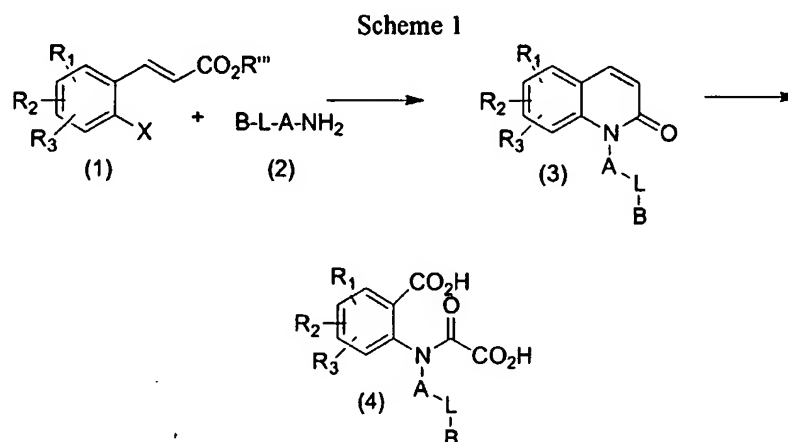
The results shown in Table 1 also demonstrate that compounds of formula (III) represented by Example 36 and 43 are at least 6 fold selective for PTP1B over the most homologous phosphatase, TCPTP. Moreover the compounds of the present invention were found to inhibit protein tyrosine phosphatase 1B with inhibitory constants in a range of about 0.05 μM to about 100 μM . In a preferred range, the compounds inhibited protein tyrosine phosphatase 1B with inhibitory constants in a range of about of about 0.05 μM to about 10 μM ; and in a more preferred range, the compounds inhibited protein tyrosine phosphatase 1B with inhibitory constants in a range of about of about 0.05 μM to about 1.0 μM .

The results shown in Table 1 also demonstrate that compounds of formula (IV) represented by Example 45 and 52 are at least 14 fold selective for PTP1B over the most homologous phosphatase, TC-PTP. Moreover the compounds of the present invention were found to inhibit protein tyrosine phosphatase 1B with inhibitory constants in a range of about 0.005 μM to about 100 μM . In a preferred range, the compounds inhibited protein tyrosine phosphatase 1B with inhibitory constants in a range of about of about 0.005 μM to about 10 μM ; and in a more preferred range, the compounds inhibited protein tyrosine phosphatase 1B with inhibitory constants in a range of about of about 0.005 μM to about 1.0 μM .

Synthetic Methods

Abbreviations which have been used in the descriptions of the scheme and the examples that follow are: dba for dibenzylideneacetone; DMSO for dimethylsulfoxide; NMP for N-methylpyrrolidinone; DMF for N,N-dimethylformamide; TFA for trifluoroacetic acid; THF for tetrahydrofuran; EDAC for 1-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-3-ethylcarbodiimide hydrochloride; and HOBt for 1-hydroxybenzotriazole hydrate.

The compounds and processes of the present invention will be better understood in connection with the following synthetic schemes which illustrate the methods by which the compounds of the invention may be prepared. The groups R^1 , R^2 and R^3 are as defined above unless otherwise noted below.



As shown in Scheme 1, compounds of formula (1) (R'' is alkyl; X is Br or I) can be reacted with compounds of formula (2) in the presence of a palladium catalyst and base to form compounds of formula (3). Representative palladium catalysts include Pd_2dba_3 with 2-dicyclohexylphosphino-2'-(N,N-dimethyl)aminobiphenyl, Pd_2dba_3 with tricyclohexylphosphine, and Pd_2dba_3 with PPh_3 . Representative bases include sodium hydride, potassium hydride, and calcium hydride. Examples of solvents used in these reactions include benzene and toluene. The reaction temperature can range between 60 °C to about 110 °C and depends on the method chosen. Reaction times are typically about 2 to about 8 hours.

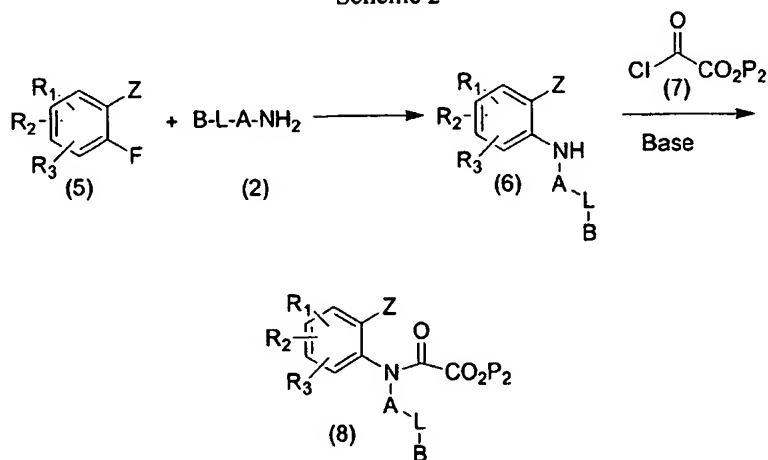
Compounds of formula (3) can be converted to compounds of formula (4) by treatment with an oxidizing agent. Representative oxidizing agents include KMnO_4 , ozone and hydrogen peroxide, and CrO_3 . Examples of solvents used in these reactions include

pyridine, water, and mixtures thereof. The reaction temperature is about 0 °C to about 35 °C and depends on the method chosen. Reaction times are typically about 12 to about 24 hours.

The acid functionalities of compounds of formula (4) can be converted to esters, amides or prodrugs by methods well known to those skilled in the art.

5

Scheme 2



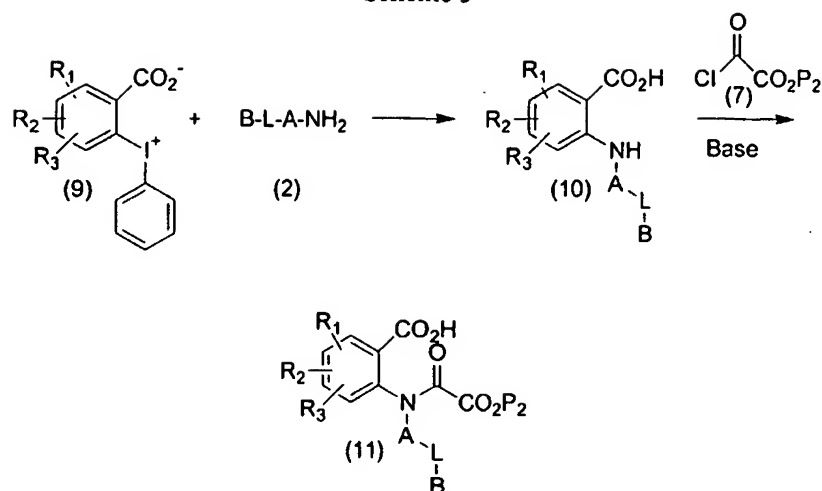
As shown in Scheme 2, compounds of formula (5) can be reacted with compounds of formula (2) under elevated temperatures to provide compounds of formula (6). Examples of solvents used in these reactions include DMSO, dioxane, and NMP. The reaction temperature is about 80 °C to about 120 °C. Reaction times are typically about 12 to about 24 hours.

The amine functionality of compounds of formula (6) can be reacted with compounds of formula (7) in the presence of base to provide compounds of formula (8). Examples of compounds of formula (7) include but are not limited to methyl oxalyl chloride, ethyl oxalyl chloride, benzyl oxalyl chloride and *tert*-butyl oxalyl chloride. Representative bases include pyridine, triethylamine, and diisopropylethylamine. Examples of solvents used in these reactions include diethyl ether, methyl *tert*-butyl ether, and dioxane. The reaction temperature is about 20 °C to about 30 °C. Reaction times are typically about 8 to about 18 hours.

The ester functionality of compounds of formula (8) can be hydrolyzed and further converted to esters, amides or prodrugs by methods known to those skilled in the art.

25

Scheme 3



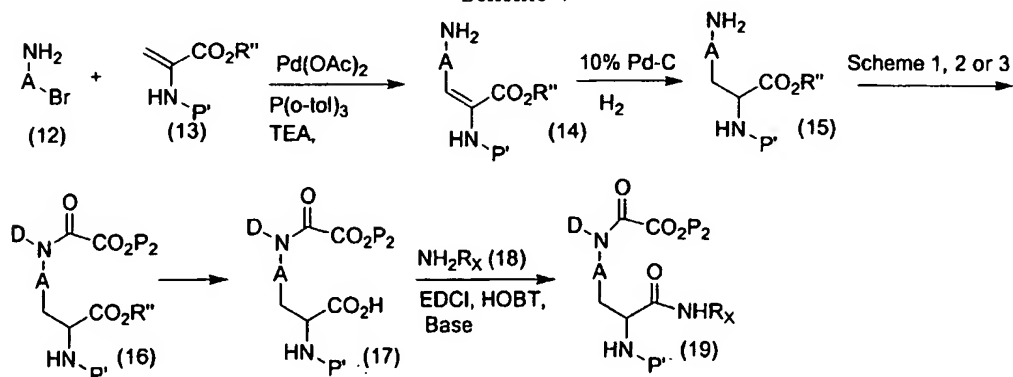
As shown in Scheme 3, compounds of formula (9) can be reacted with compounds of formula (2) in the presence of catalytic copper(II) acetate to provide compounds of formula (10). Examples of solvents used in these reactions include isopropanol, n-propanol, butanol, and pentanol. The reaction temperature is about 70 °C to about 100 °C. Reaction times are typically about 4 to about 12 hours.

The amine functionality of compounds of formula (10) can be reacted with compounds of formula (7) in the presence of base in a similar fashion as described in Scheme 2, to provide compounds of formula (11).

The ester functionality of compounds of formula (11) can be hydrolyzed and further converted to esters, amides or prodrugs by methods known to those skilled in the art.

15

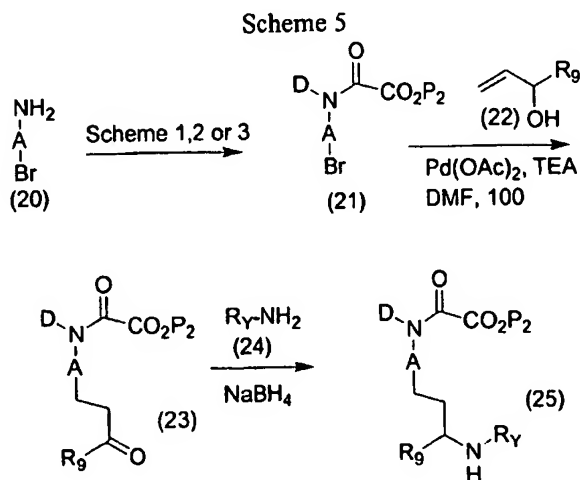
Scheme 4



As shown in scheme 4 compounds of formula (13) (P' is a amino protecting group such as but not limited to acetyl, Boc, benzylcarbamate and allylcarbamate; R'' is alkyl) can be reacted with compounds of formula (12) in the presence of a palladium catalyst and a base to form compounds of formula (14). Representative palladium catalysts include but are not limited to palladium acetate and tri(ortho-tolyl)phosphine. Representative bases include but are not limited to triethylamine and diisopropylethylamine. A typical solvent used in this reaction is acetonitrile. The reduction of the alkene of compound (14) in the presence of 10 % palladium under 4 atmospheres of hydrogen in such solvents as methanol, ethanol or ethyl acetate provides compounds of formula (15). The amine portion of compounds of formula (15) may be converted to the substituted amine of compounds of formula (16) through the methods described in Scheme 1, 2 or 3. The hydrolysis of R'' of compounds of formula (16) can be effected by methods known to those skilled in the art to provide compounds of formula (17). Compounds of formula (17) can be coupled to amines of general formula (18) to provide compounds of formula (19) using reagents such as 1-[3-(dimethylamino)propyl]-3-ethylcarbodiimide hydrochloride and 1-hydroxybenzotriazole and a base such as triethylamine, N-methyl morpholine or diisopropylethylamine in such solvents as methylene chloride.

The ester functionality of compounds of formula (19) can be hydrolyzed and further converted to esters, amides or prodrugs by methods known to those skilled in the art.

20



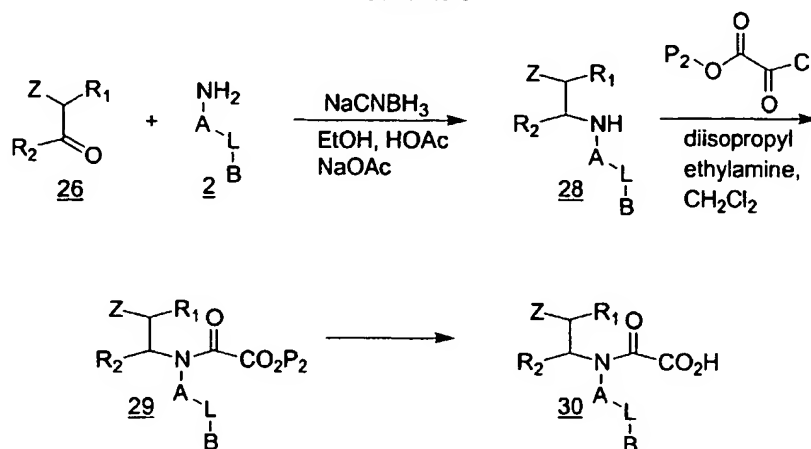
As shown in scheme 5, compounds of formula (20) can be converted to compounds of formula (21) through methods described in Scheme 4. Compounds of formula (21) can be reacted with compounds of formula (22) in the presence of a palladium catalyst and a base to provide compounds of formula (23). Typical palladium catalysts include but are not limited

25

to palladium acetate and tri(ortho-tolyl)phosphine. Typical bases include but are not limited to triethylamine or diisopropylethylamine. Compounds of formula (23) can be reacted with amines of formula (24) in the presence of a reducing compound such as but not limited to sodium borohydride or sodium cyanoborohydride to provide compounds of formula (25).

5 The ester functionality of compounds of formula (25) can be hydrolyzed and further converted to esters, amides or prodrugs by methods known to those skilled in the art or by methods described herein.

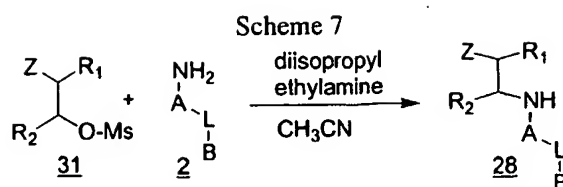
Scheme 6



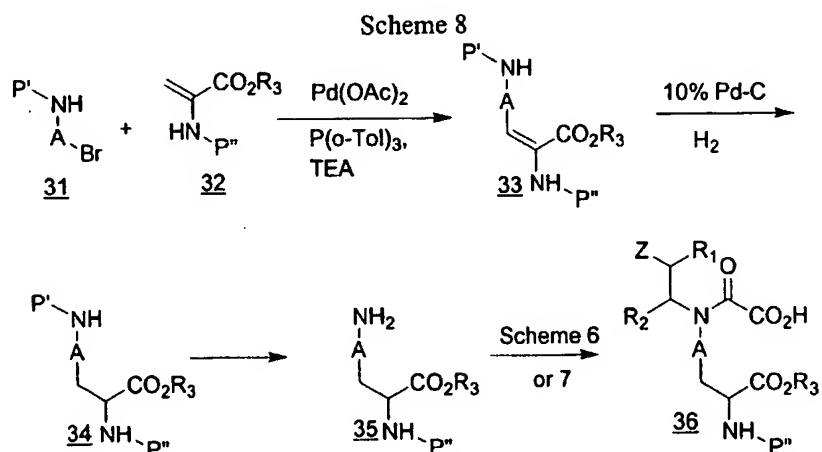
10

As shown in Scheme 6, compounds of formula (III), represented by compounds of general formula 30 wherein A, B, L, R₁, R₂ and Z are defined in formula (I), may be prepared using the strategy outlined. Compounds of general formula 26 can be reacted with amines of general formula 2 and sodium cyanoborohydride in the presence of acetic acid and sodium acetate in solvent such as but not limited to ethanol or methanol to provide amines of general formula 28. Compounds of general formula 28 can be reacted with reagents such as but not limited to ethyl oxalyl chloride, tert-butyl oxalyl chloride or benzyl oxalyl chloride and the like in the presence of bases such as but not limited to diisopropylethylamine, triethylamine, N-methylmorpholine, imidazole and the like in solvents such as dichloromethane, tetrahydrofuran, benzene and the like to form compounds of general formula 29. Compounds of general formula 29 can be reacted under conditions commonly known to remove the substituent P₂, for example aqueous lithium hydroxide, aqueous sodium hydroxide or aqueous potassium hydroxide in alcoholic solvents such as but not limited to ethanol and methanol where P₂ is alkyl; trifluoroacetic acid in dichloromethane where P₂ is tert butyl; and hydrogen gas and palladium on carbon where P₂ is benzyl to form compounds of general formula 30.

25



5 As shown in Scheme 7, an alternative method of preparing compounds of general formula 28 can be effected through the reaction of compounds of general formula 31 with compounds of general formula 2 in the presence of a base such as but not limited to diisopropylethylamine in solvents such as acetonitrile and the like under heated conditions to provide compounds of general formula 28. Typical reaction conditions used for this transformation are heating to 80 °C for 16 hours. Compounds of general formula 28 generated under these conditions can then be converted into compounds of general formula 30 as outlined in scheme 6.

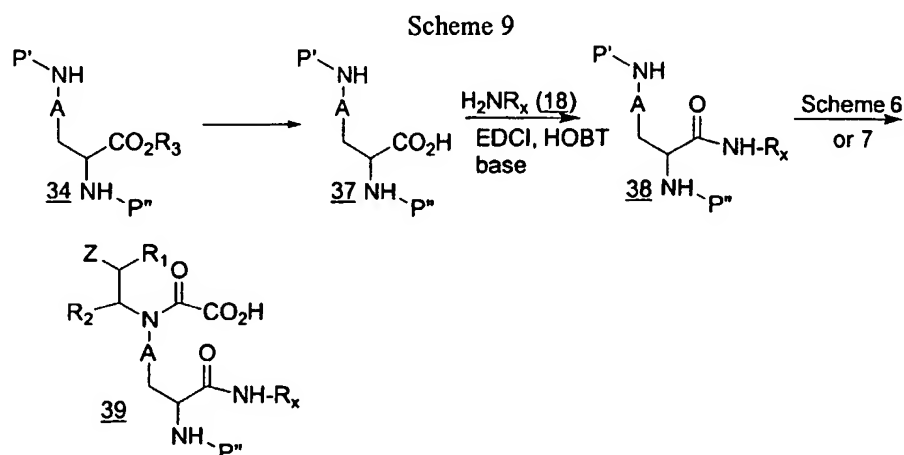


15

As shown in Scheme 8, compounds of formula (III), represented by compounds of general formula 36, wherein A, R₁, R₂, R₃, P', P'' and Z are defined in formula (I), may be prepared using the strategy outlined above. The reaction of compounds of general formula 31 with compounds of general formula 32 in the presence of palladium acetate, tri-*o*-tolyl phosphine and a base such as but not limited to triethylamine under heated conditions will provide compounds of general formula 33. The reaction temperatures are generally 110 °C and are generally carried out for 4 hours. Compounds of general formula 33 can be converted to compounds of general formula 34 by the reaction with hydrogen gas in the presence of a catalyst such as but not limited to palladium on carbon in solvents such as but

25

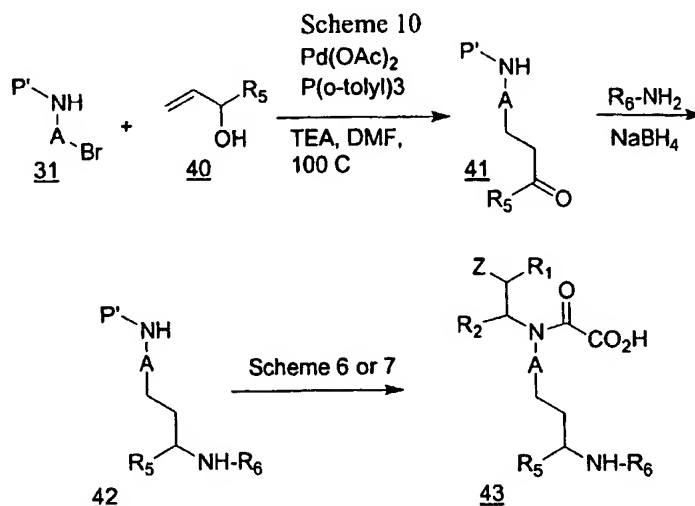
not limited to methanol, ethanol, ethyl acetate and tetrahydrofuran. The reaction of compound of general formula 34 to the compound of general formula 35 can be effected by the removal of the nitrogen protecting group P'. The nitrogen protecting groups used in the compounds described within are specific to the protecting group used for each example and can be found in the description in Greenes "Protecting groups in Organic Chemistry" 3rd ed. 1999, Wiley & Sons, Inc. A typical protecting group used in these examples described within is *tert*-butoxycarbonyl which is removed by the reaction with either 4N HCL in dioxane or trifluoroacetic acid in dichloromethane. Typical reaction conditions are generally done at ambient temperature for 2-4 hours. The conversion of the compound of general formula 35 into the compound of general formula 36 can be effected using the reactions previously described in Scheme 6 or Scheme 7.



As shown in Scheme 9, compounds of formula (III), represented by compounds of general formula 39, wherein A, R₁, R₂, R₃, R_x, P', P'' and Z are defined in formula (I), may be prepared using the strategy outlined above. Compound of general formula 34, previously shown in Scheme 8, can be converted to compound of general formula 37 using the same procedure described in the conversion of compound of general formula 29 to the compound of general formula 30 in Scheme 6 using sodium hydroxide or potassium hydroxide and the conditions previously mentioned in Scheme 6. The carboxylic acid portion of compound of general formula 37 can be converted to an amide of general formula 38 by the reaction with the amine 18 and ethyl dimethylpropyl carbodiimide, *N*-hydroxy benzotriazole and a base such as but not limited to *N*-methyl morpholine and the like in a solvent such as dichloromethane and tetrahydrofuran. The reaction are typically done between 0-20 °C and are complete within 12 hours. The conversion of the compound of general formula 38 into the compound of general formula 39 can be effected using the reactions previously described in a two step

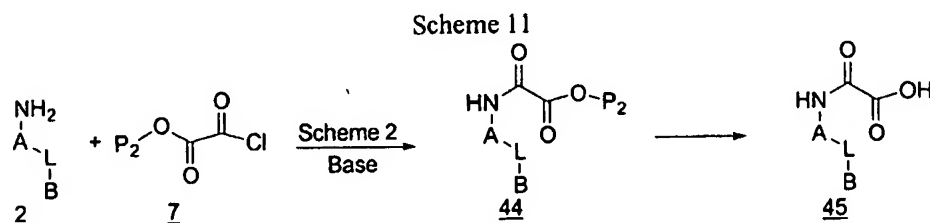
procedure. The removal of the nitrogen protecting group P' using procedures described in Scheme 8 followed by reaction conditions described in Scheme 6 or Scheme 7 provide the compound of general formula 39.

5



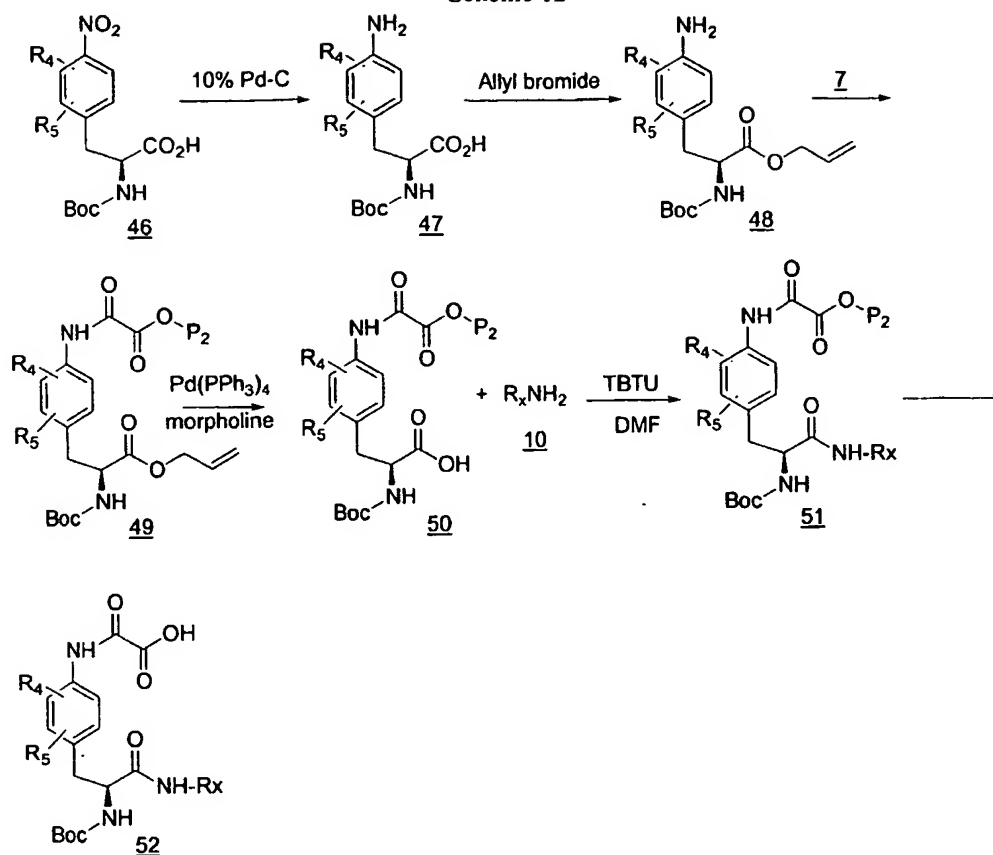
As shown in Scheme 10, compounds of formula (III), represented by compounds of general formula 43, wherein A, R₁, R₂, R₅, R₆, P', and Z are defined in formula (I), may be prepared using the strategy outlined above. Compound of general formula 31 can be reacted with alkenes of general formula 40 in the presence of palladium acetate and a base such as but not limited to triethylamine in a solvent such as but not limited to *N,N*-dimethylformamide under heated conditions for 16 hours to provide compounds of general formula 41. Compounds of general formula 41 can be reacted with substituted amines such as R₆-NH₂ and sodium borohydride in solvents such as but not limited to methanol and ethanol to provide compounds of general formula 42. The conversion of compounds of general formula 42 into compounds of general formula 43 using the two step procedure mentioned in Scheme 9, wherein the amine protecting group is removed and the amine functionality is substituted to provide compounds of formula (III).

20

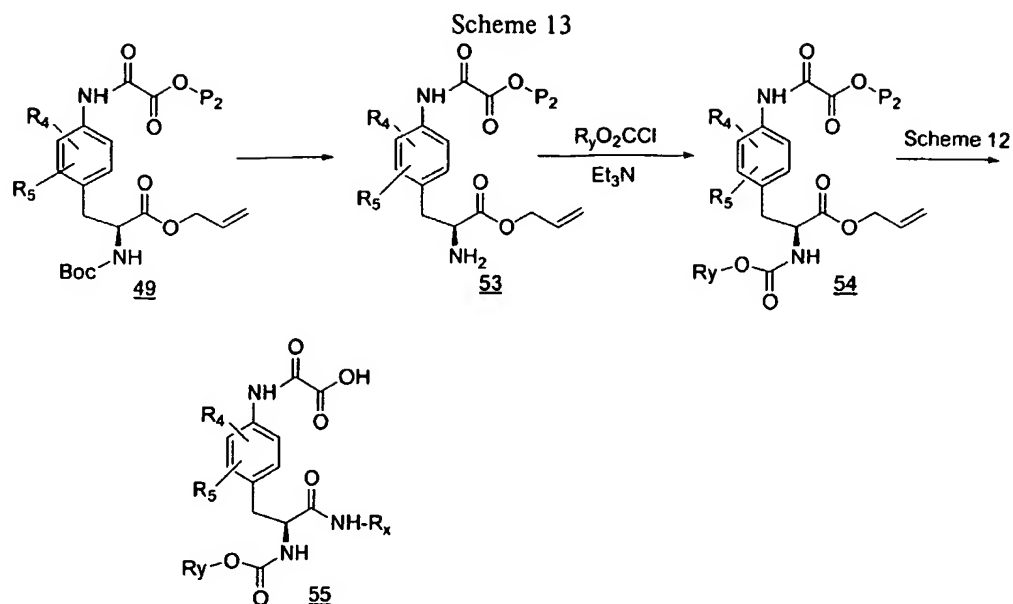


As shown in Scheme 11, compounds of formula (V), represented by compounds of general formula 45 wherein A, B, L, P₂ and R₂ are defined in formula (I), may be prepared using the strategy outlined. Compounds of general formula 2 may be reacted with compounds of general formula 7, as previously demonstrated in Scheme 2, in the presence of
5 bases such as but not limited to diisopropylethylamine, triethylamine, N-methylmorpholine, imidazole and the like in solvents such as dichloromethane, tetrahydrofuran, benzene and the like to form compounds of general formula 44. Compounds of general formula 7 may be selected from but not limited to ethyl oxalyl chloride, tert-butyl oxalyl chloride and benzyl oxalyl chloride and the like. Compounds of general formula 44 can be reacted under
10 conditions commonly known to remove the substituent P₂, for example where P₂ is alkyl, aqueous lithium hydroxide, aqueous sodium hydroxide or aqueous potassium hydroxide in alcoholic solvents such as but not limited to ethanol and methanol may be used; where P₂ is tert butyl, trifluoroacetic acid in dichloromethane may be used; and where P₂ is benzyl, hydrogen gas and palladium on carbon may be used to form compounds of general formula
15 45.

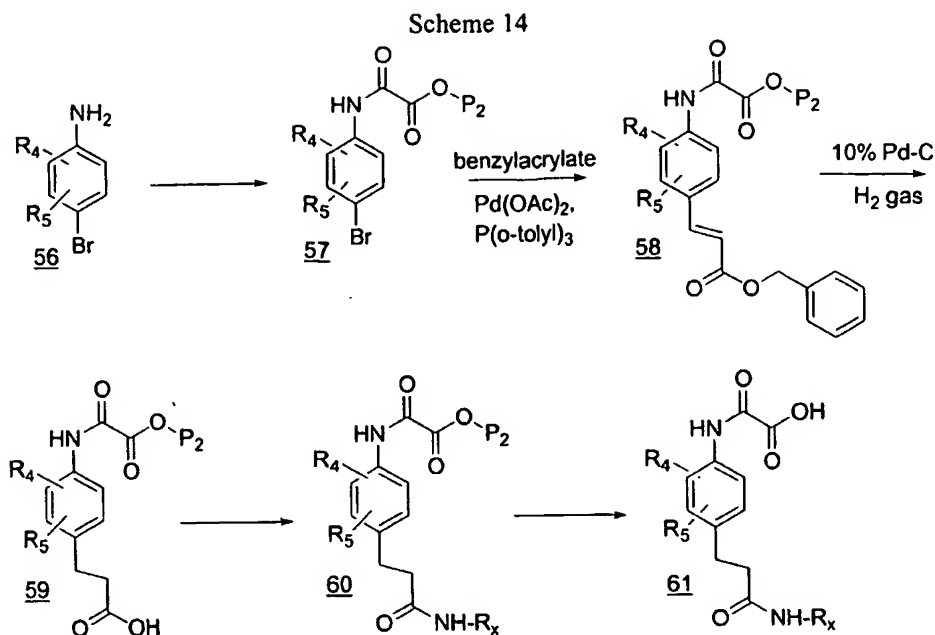
Scheme 12



- As shown in Scheme 12, compounds of formula (IV) represented by compounds of general formula 52, wherein R₄, R₅, R_x, P₂ are defined in formula (I) may be prepared using the strategy outlined. Compounds of general formula 46 may be reacted under conditions of hydrogen gas and palladium on carbon to obtain compounds of general formula 47. Compounds of general formula 47 may be reacted with allyl bromide and CsCO₃ in solvent such as but not limited to DMF to provide compounds of general formula 48. Compound of general formula 48 may be reacted with compounds of general formula 2 under conditions defined in Scheme 2 or Scheme 11 to provide compounds of general formula 8. Compounds of general formula 49 may be reacted with Pd(PPh₃)₄ and morpholine in a solvent such as but not limited to dichloromethane to provide compounds of general formula 50. Compounds of general formula 50 may be reacted with compounds of general formula 18, TBTU in solvents such as but not limited to DMF to provide compounds of general formula 51. Compounds of general formula 51 may be converted to compounds of general formula 52 through methods previously mentioned in Scheme 11 demonstrating the removal of P₂.



As shown in Scheme 13, compounds of formula (IV) represented by compounds of general formula 55, wherein R_4 , R_5 , R_x , P_2 are defined in formula (I) and R_y is alkyl or tert-butyl, may be prepared using the strategy outlined. Compounds of general formula 49 can be reacted with trifluoroacetic acid in dichloromethane to provide compounds of formula 53. Compounds of general formula 53 can be reacted with $R_y\text{O}_2\text{CCl}$, wherein R_y is previously described, in the presence of but not limited to triethylamine in solvents including but not limited to dichloromethane, tetrahydrofuran and the like to provide compounds of general formula 54. Compounds of general formula 54 may be processed as previously described in Scheme 12 to provide compounds of general formula 55.



As shown in Scheme 14, compounds of formula (IV) represented by compounds of general formula 61, wherein R_4 , R_5 , R_x , P_2 are defined in formula (I) may be prepared using the strategy outlined. Compounds of general formula 56 may be reacted with compounds of general formula 7 as described in Scheme 2 or Scheme 11 to provide compounds of general formula 57. Compounds of general formula 57 may be reacted with benzyl acrylate, palladium acetate and ortho-tolyl palladium in a solvent such as but not limited to DMF to provide compounds of general formula 58. Compounds of general formula 58 may be reacted with 10% Palladium on carbon in the presence of hydrogen gas to provide compounds of general formula 59. Compounds of general formula 59 may be reacted with compounds of general formula 18 using conditions described in Scheme 12 to provide compounds of general formula 60. Compounds of general formula 60 can be converted to compounds of general formula 61 using conditions described in Scheme 11.

The present invention will now be described in connection with certain preferred embodiments which are not intended to limit its scope. On the contrary, the present invention covers all alternatives, modifications, and equivalents as can be included within the scope of the claims. Thus, the following examples, which include preferred embodiments, will illustrate the preferred practice of the present invention, it being understood that the examples are for the purposes of illustration of certain preferred embodiments and are presented to provide what is believed to be the most useful and readily understood description of its procedures and conceptual aspects.

The present invention will now be described in connection with certain preferred embodiments which are not intended to limit its scope. On the contrary, the present invention covers all alternatives, modifications, and equivalents as can be included within the scope of the claims. Thus, the following examples, which include preferred embodiments, will illustrate the preferred practice of the present invention, it being understood that the examples are for the purposes of illustration of certain preferred embodiments and are presented to provide what is believed to be the most useful and readily understood description of its procedures and conceptual aspects.

Compounds of the invention were named by ACD/ChemSketch version 5.01 (developed by Advanced Chemistry Development, Inc., Toronto, ON, Canada) or were given names which appeared to be consistent with ACD nomenclature.

Example 1

N-[5-({*N*-acetyl-4-[(carboxycarbonyl)(2-carboxyphenyl)amino]-3-ethylphenylalanyl}amino)pentanoyl]-*L*-tyrosine

Example 1A

benzyl 2-(acetylamino)acrylate

To a mixture of 2-acetamidoacrylic acid (10.3 g, 80.0 mmol) and K₂CO₃ (10 g, 72.5 mmol) in N,N-dimethylformamide (50 mL) was added benzyl bromide (8.7 mL, 72.5 mmol) at room temperature then stirred at room temperature for 3 hours. The mixture was partitioned between ethyl acetate and water (50 mL, 1:1), the aqueous layer was extracted with ethyl acetate (2 x 45 mL). The combined organic layers was washed with brine (2 x 25 mL), dried (MgSO₄), filtered and concentrated under reduced pressure to provide titled compound. MS (ESI(+)) m/e 220(M+H)⁺; ¹H NMR (300 MHz, DMSO-d₆) δ 9.37 (s, 1H), 7.43-7.30 (m, 5H), 6.13 (s, 1H), 5.70 (s, 1H), 5.23 (s, 2H), 2.01 (s, 3H).

Example 1B

benzyl (2*E*)-2-(acetylamino)-3-(4-amino-3-ethylphenyl)-2-propenoate

To benzyl 2-(acetylamino)acrylate (80.0 mmol) in acetonitrile (200 mL) was added Pd(OAc)₂ (488 mg, 2.18 mmol), (o-Tol)₃P (1.32 g, 4.35 mmol), Et₃N (20 mL) followed by addition of 4-bromo-2-ethylaniline (14.5 g, 72.5 mmol). The reaction mixture was heated to reflux overnight, concentrated under reduced pressure, taken up in ethyl acetate, washed with aqueous NaHCO₃, dried (MgSO₄), filtered and concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was precipitated from ethyl acetate/hexane to provide the titled compound (6.3 g). The filtrate was precipitated a second time to provide an additional 5 g of the titled

compound. MS (ESI(+)) m/e 339 (M+H)⁺; ¹H NMR (300 MHz, DMSO-d₆) δ 9.31 (s, 1H), 7.40-7.20 (m, 8H), 6.59 (d, 1H), 5.52 (s, 2H), 5.16 (s, 2H), 2.42 (q, 2H), 1.98 (s, 3H), 1.13 (t, 3H).

5

Example 1CN-acetyl-4-amino-3-ethylphenylalanine

A mixture of benzyl (2*E*)-2-(acetylamino)-3-(4-amino-3-ethylphenyl)-2-propenoate (5g) and 10% Pd-C (100 mg) in methanol (50 mL) was stirred under an atmosphere of hydrogen (4 atmospheres) at ambient temperature overnight to provide the titled compound. MS (ESI(+)) m/e 251 (M+H)⁺; ¹H NMR (300 MHz, DMSO-d₆) δ 8.02 (d, 1H), 6.77-6.70 (m, 2H), 6.50 (d, 1H), 4.31-4.21 (m, 1H), 2.84 (dd, 1H), 2.65 (dd, 1H), 2.39 (q, 2H), 1.78 (s, 3H), 1.10 (t, 3H).

10

Example 1Dallyl 2-(acetylamino)-3-(4-amino-3-ethylphenyl)propanoate

15

A mixture of *N*-acetyl-4-amino-3-ethylphenylalanine (2.0 g, 8.0 mmol), Cs₂CO₃ (2.61 g, 8.0 mmol) and allyl bromide (692 μL, 8.0 mmol) in *N,N*-dimethylformamide (40 mL) was stirred at room temperature for 3 hours, concentrated under reduce pressure and partitioned between ethyl acetate and water (100mL, 1:1). The organic phase was washed with brine (1 x 50 mL), dried (MgSO₄), filtered and concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was purified by on silica gel with ethyl acetate/hexane (5:3) to provide titled compound (1.44 g). MS (ESI(+)) m/e 291 (M+H)⁺; ¹H NMR (300 MHz, DMSO-d₆) δ 8.23 (d, 1H), 6.77-6.70 (m, 2H), 6.50 (d, 1H), 5.90-5.76 (m, 1H), 5.30-5.15 (m, 2H), 4.67 (s, 2H), 4.54-4.50 (m, 2H), 4.38-4.30 (m, 1H), 2.77(ddd, 2H), 2.39 (q, 2H), 1.80 (s, 3H), 1.10 (t, 3H).

20

25

Example 1E2-{4-[2-(acetylamino)-3-(allyloxy)-3-oxopropyl][*tert*-butoxy(oxo)acetyl]-2-ethylanilino}benzoic acid

The titled compound was prepared according to the method described in Example 7 F-G by substituting allyl 2-(acetylamino)-3-(4-amino-3-ethylphenyl)propanoate for 3-(4-amino-naphthalen-1-yl)-2-methoxycarbonylamino-propionic acid 2-trimethylsilanyl-ethyl ester. MS (APCI (+)) m/e 539 (M+H)⁺.

30

Example 1Fbenzhydryl 2-{4-[2-(acetylamino)-3-(allyloxy)-3-oxopropyl][*tert*-butoxy(oxo)acetyl]-2-ethylanilino}benzoate

35

To 2-{4-[2-(acetylamino)-3-(allyloxy)-3-oxopropyl][*tert*-butoxy(oxo)acetyl]-2-ethylanylino}benzoic acid in acetone was added diphenyldiazomethane (until all starting material was consumed as evident by monitoring via TLC). The reaction mixture was concentrated under reduced pressure, purified on silica gel using ethyl acetate as eluent to provide the titled compound. MS (ESI(+)) *m/e* 705 (M+H)⁺; ¹H NMR (300 MHz, DMSO-d₆) δ 8.51-8.01 (m, 2H), 7.73-6.86 (m, 16H), 5.93-5.78 (m, 1H), 5.34-5.10 (m, 2H), 4.57-4.40 (m, 3H), 3.10-2.84 (m, 2H), 2.58-2.42 (m, 2H), 1.82-1.77 (m, 3H), 1.22-0.78 (m, 3H), 1.07, 1.05, 1.00 (s, s, s, 9H).

10

Example 1G

N-acetyl-4-{2-[(benzhydryloxy)carbonyl][*tert*-butoxy(oxo)acetyl]anilino}-3-ethylphenylalanine

A mixture benzhydryl 2-{4-[2-(acetylamino)-3-(allyloxy)-3-oxopropyl][*tert*-butoxy(oxo)acetyl]-2-ethylanylino}benzoate (3.4 g, 4.8 mmol), Pd(Ph₃P)₄ (166 mg, 0.144 mmol) and morpholine (0.5 ml, 5.8 mmol) in dichloromethane (25 mL) was stirred under N₂ atmosphere for 2 hours, partitioned between ethyl acetate and water (75 mL, 1:1). The organic phase was washed with 1N HCl (1 x 25 mL), brine (1 x 25mL), dried (MgSO₄), filtered and concentrated under reduced pressure to provide the titled compound (3.3 g). MS (ESI(+)) *m/e* 665 (M+H)⁺; ¹H NMR (300 MHz, DMSO-d₆) δ 12.67 (s, 1H), 8.51-7.98(m, 2H), 7.73-6.86 (m, 16H), 4.53-4.33 (m, 1H), 3.12-2.76 (m, 2H), 2.58-2.42 (m, 2H), 1.82-1.77 (m, 3H), 1.22-0.78 (m, 3H), 1.06, 1.04, 1.00 (s, s, s, 9H).

20

Example 1H

2-(trimethylsilyl)ethyl 5-[(*tert*-butoxycarbonyl)amino]pentanoate

A mixture of boc-d-aminovaleric acid (13.0 g, 59.5 mmol), pyridine (45 mL), (2-trimethylsilyl)ethanol (10.3 ml, 71.8 mmol) and dicyclohexylcarbodiimide (13.5 g, 65.4 mmol) in acetotnitrile (60 mL) was stirred cold (ice bath) for 1 hour and then kept in a refrigerator overnight. The suspension was filtered and the filtrate concentrated under reduced pressure to remove most of pyridine, diluted with ethyl acetate and washed with 1N HCl, saturated NaHCO₃. The organic phase was dried (MgSO₄), filtered and concentrated. The concentrate was purified by flash column chromatography on silica gel with hexane/ethyl acetate (4:1) to provide the desired product (15.3g). MS (ESI(+)) *m/e* 318 (M+H)⁺; ¹H NMR (300 MHz, DMSO-d₆) δ 6.77 (t, 1H), 4.11-4.03 (m, 2H), 3.30 (m, 2H), 2.91-2.83 (m, 2H), 2.26-2.20 (m, 2H), 1.52-1.40 (m, 2H), 1.35 (s, 9H), 0.96-0.88 (m, 2H).

35

Example 1I

benzhydryl 2-{4-[2-(acetylamino)-3-oxo-3-({5-oxo-5-[2-(trimethylsilyl)ethoxy]pentyl} amino)propyl][*tert*-butoxy(oxo)acetyl]-2-ethyl
anilino}benzoate

- 5 2-(trimethylsilyl)ethyl 5-[(*tert*-butoxycarbonyl)amino]pentanoate (317 mg, 1.0 mmol) was treated with 4N HCl in dioxane at room temperature for 30 minutes, then concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue (665 mg, 1.0 mmol), *N*-acetyl-4-{2-[(benzhydryloxy)carbonyl][*tert*-butoxy(oxo)acetyl]anilino}-3-ethylphenylalanine (665 mg, 1.0 mmol), 2-(1H-benzotriazole-1-yl)-1,1,3,3-tetramethyluronium tetrafluoroborate (321 mg, 1.0 mmol) and diisopropylethylamine (521 μ L, 3.0 mmol) in *N,N*-dimethylformamide (2 mL) was stirred at ambient temperature overnight, diluted with ethyl acetate and washed with aqueous NaHCO₃ (1 x 30 mL), brine (1 x 30 mL), dried (MgSO₄), filtered and concentrate under reduced pressure. The residue was purified on silica gel eluting with ethyl acetate to provide of titled compound 480 mg. MS (APCI(+)) *m/e* 864 (M+H)⁺.
- 10
- 15

Example 1J

5-{[2-(acetylamino)-3-(4-{2-[(benzhydryloxy)carbonyl][*tert*-butoxy(oxo)acetyl]anilino}-3-ethylphenyl)propanoyl]amino}pentanoic acid

- 20 A solution of benzhydryl 2-{4-[2-(acetylamino)-3-oxo-3-({5-oxo-5-[2-(trimethylsilyl)ethoxy]pentyl} amino)propyl][*tert*-butoxy(oxo)acetyl]-2-ethylanilino}benzoate (356 mg, 0.41 mmol) and tetrabutylammonium fluoride-1M in THF (4 mL) was stirred at room temperature for 2 hours, diluted with ethyl acetate, washed with 1N HCl (3 x 25 mL), dried (MgSO₄), filtered and concentrated under reduced pressure to provide the titled compound (305 mg). MS (APCI(+)) *m/e* 764 (M+H)⁺; ¹H NMR (300 MHz, DMSO-d₆) δ 8.31-7.90(m, 2H), 7.73-6.85 (m, 16H), 4.43-4.33 (m, 1H), 3.22-2.48 (m, 6H), 2.22-2.15 (m, 2H), 1.80-1.72 (m, 3H), 1.62-1.25 (m, 4H), 1.05, 1.04, 1.00 (s, s, s, 9H), 1.25-0.78 (m, 3H).
- 25

Example 1K

(2S)-2-[(5-{[2-(acetylamino)-3-(4-{2-[(benzhydryloxy)carbonyl][*tert*-butoxy(oxo)acetyl]anilino}-3-ethylphenyl)propanoyl]amino}pentanoyl)amino]-3-(4-*tert*-butoxyphenyl)propanoic acid

- 30 A mixture 5-{[2-(acetylamino)-3-(4-{2-[(benzhydryloxy)carbonyl][*tert*-butoxy(oxo)acetyl]anilino}-3-ethylphenyl)propanoyl]amino}pentanoic acid (30 mg, 0.04 mmol), H-TYR(TBU)-OTBU HCL(26 mg, 0.08 mmol), 2-(1H-benzotriazole-1-yl)-1,1,3,3-tetramethyluronium tetrafluoroborate (16 mg, 0.048 mmol) and diisopropylethylamine (26
- 35

μL) in N,N-dimethylformamide (250 μL) was stirred at ambient temperature overnight, concentrated under reduced pressure and the residue purified by reverse-phase HPLC eluting with 5-100% acetonitrile/ aqueous 0.1% trifluoroacetic acid to provide the titled compound.

5

Example 1L*N*-[5-({*N*-acetyl-4-[(carboxycarbonyl)(2-carboxyphenyl)amino]-3-ethylphenylalanyl)amino]pentanoyl]-*L*-tyrosine

(2*S*)-2-[[5-[[2-(acetylamino)-3-(4-{2-[(benzhydryloxy)carbonyl][*tert*-butoxy(oxo)acetyl]anilino}-3-ethylphenyl)propanoyl]amino}pentanoyl)amino]-3-(4-*tert*-butoxyphenyl)propanoic acid was treated with trifluoroacetic acid / dichloromethane (1 mL, 1:1) at ambient temperature for 3 hours, concentrated under reduced pressure and purified by HPLC eluting with 5-100% acetonitrile / aqueous 0.1% trifluoroacetic acid to provide the titled compound. MS (ESI(+)) *m/e* 705 (M+H)⁺; ¹H NMR (500 MHz, DMSO-*d*₆) δ 12-13.5 (bs, 2H), 9.18 (s, 1H), 8.11-7.78 (m, 4H), 7.59-6.98 (m, 7H), 6.80-6.61 (m, 3H), 4.57-4.40 (m, 1H), 4.39-4.32 (m, 1H), 3.00-2.55 (m, 6H), 2.04-2.00 (m, 2H), 1.78, 1.75 (s, s, 3H), 1.40-1.36 (m, 2H), 1.35-1.20 (m, 2H), 1.35-0.91 (m, 3H).

15

Example 2*N*-{5-[(*N*-acetyl-4-[(carboxycarbonyl)(2-carboxyphenyl)amino]-3-ethylphenylalanyl)amino]pentanoyl}-*S*-benzyl-*L*-cysteine

The titled compound was prepared according to the procedure described in Example 1K-L substituting 8-benzyl-*L*-cysteine *tert*-butyl ester hydrochloride for H-TYR (TBU)-OTBU HCL. MS (ESI(+)) *m/e* 735(M+H)⁺; ¹H NMR (500 MHz, DMSO-*d*₆) 8.16-8.04 (m, 2H), 7.95-7.78 (m, 2H), 7.58-6.88 (m, 11H), 4.50-4.40 (m, 2H), 3.74(s, 2H), 3.07-2.55 (m, 6H), 2.08-2.05 (m, 2H), 1.78, 1.75 (s, s, 3H), 1.45-1.42 (m, 2H), 1.41-1.32 (m, 2H), 1.28-0.91 (m, 3H).

25

30

Example 3*N*-{5-[(*N*-acetyl-4-[(carboxycarbonyl)(2-carboxyphenyl)amino]-3-ethylphenylalanyl)amino]pentanoyl}-*L*-methionine

The titled compound was prepared according to the procedure described in Example 1K-L, substituting H-MET-OTBU HCL for H-TYR (TBU)-OTBU HCL. MS (ESI(+)) *m/e* 673 (M+H)⁺; ¹H NMR (500 MHz, DMSO-*d*₆) δ 8.12-8.02 (m, 2H), 7.95-7.79 (m, 2H), 7.57-6.74 (m, 6H), 4.50-4.40 (m, 1H), 4.32-4.27 (m, 1H), 3.07-2.45 (m, 6H), 2.15-2.07 (m, 2H),

35

2.03 (s, 3H), 1.98-1.79 (m, 2H), 1.78, 1.75 (s, s, 3H), 1.48-1.42 (m, 2H), 1.40-1.32 (m, 2H), 1.28-0.91 (m, 3H).

5

Example 4

methyl N-{5-[(N-acetyl-4-[(carboxycarbonyl)(2-carboxyphenyl)amino]-3-ethylphenylalanyl)amino]pentanoyl}-L-methioninate

The titled compound was prepared according to the procedure described in Example 1K-L, substituting L-methionine methyl ester hydrochloride for H-TYR (TBU)-OTBU HCL.
10 MS (ESI(+)) m/e 687 (M+H)⁺; ¹H NMR (500 MHz, DMSO-d₆) δ 8.20-8.03 (m, 2H), 7.95-7.80 (m, 2H), 7.56-6.74 (m, 6H), 4.50-4.40 (m, 1H), 4.38-4.32 (m, 1H), 3.62 (s, 3H), 3.07-2.43 (m, 6H), 2.13-2.07 (m, 2H), 2.03 (s, 3H), 1.97-1.79 (m, 2H), 1.78, 1.75 (s, s, 3H), 1.48-1.42 (m, 2H), 1.38-1.32 (m, 2H), 1.28-0.92 (m, 3H).

15

Example 5

N-{5-[(N-acetyl-4-[(carboxycarbonyl)(2-carboxyphenyl)amino]-3-ethylphenylalanyl)amino]pentanoyl}-S-ethyl-L-homocysteine

The titled compound was prepared according to the procedure described in Example 1K-L, substituting L-ethionine methyl ester hydrochloride for H-TYR (TBU)-OTBU HCL, followed by hydrolysis with 1N NaOH (3 eq.) / MeOH (250 μL) / THF (250 μL) at ambient temperature for 2 hours. MS (ESI(+)) m/e 687 (M+H)⁺; ¹H NMR (500 MHz, DMSO-d₆) δ 8.14-8.02 (m, 2H), 7.95-7.79 (m, 2H), 7.57-6.74 (m, 6H), 4.50-4.40 (m, 1H), 4.32-4.27 (m, 1H), 3.07-2.45 (m, 8H), 2.15-2.07 (m, 2H), 1.97-1.79 (m, 2H), 1.78, 1.75 (s, s, 3H), 1.48-1.42 (m, 2H), 1.38-1.32 (m, 2H), 1.28-0.91 (m, 3H), 1.16 (t, 3H).
25

Example 6

N-[5-[(N-acetyl-4-[(carboxycarbonyl)(2-carboxyphenyl)amino]-3-ethylphenylalanyl)amino]pentanoyl]-L-norleucine

30

The titled compound was prepared according to the procedure described in Example 5, substituting L-norleucine methyl ester hydrochloride for L-ethionine methyl ester hydrochloride. MS (ESI(+)) m/e 655 (M+H)⁺; ¹H NMR (500 MHz, DMSO-d₆) δ 8.12-7.79 (m, 4H), 7.57-6.74 (m, 6H), 4.52-4.40 (m, 1H), 4.18-4.13 (m, 1H), 3.05-2.52 (m, 6H), 2.15-2.05 (m, 2H), 2.03 (s, 3H), 1.78, 1.75 (s, s, 3H), 1.72-1.50 (m, 2H), 1.48-1.40 (m, 2H), 1.40-1.32 (m, 2H), 1.30-0.91 (m, 5H), 0.85 (t, 3H).
35

Example 7

N-(5-{{3-(4-[(carboxycarbonyl)(2-carboxyphenyl)amino]-1-naphthyl)-N-(methoxycarbonyl)alanyl}amino}pentanoyl)-L-methionine

5

Example 7A1-methyl-4-nitro-naphthalene

The titled compound was prepared according to the procedure described in *J. Org. Chem.* **1991**, 56, 1739 Davalli, S.; Lunazzi, L.; Macciantelli, D.;

10

Example 7B3-(4-nitro-1-naphthyl)alanine

The titled compound was prepared from 1-methyl-8-nitronaphthalene according to the procedure described in *J. Med. Chem.* **1967**, 10, 293 Benigni, J. D.; Minnis, R. L.;

15

Example 7C2-methoxycarbonylamino-3-(4-nitro-naphthalen-1-yl)-propionic acid

20

A mixture of 3-(4-nitro-1-naphthyl)alanine (0.65 g, 2.5 mmol), aqueous NaHCO₃ (5 mL) and methylchloroformate (230uL, 3 mmol, 1.2 eq) in dioxane (10 mL) was stirred for 3 hours, acidified to a pH <3 with aqueous 2N HCl and extracted with ethyl acetate. The combined organic layers was washed with water (1 x 25 mL), brine(1 x 25 mL), dried (MgSO₄), filtered and concentrated under reduce pressure to provide the titled compound. MS (APCI(+)) m/e 319 (M+H)⁺.

25

Example 7D

2-methoxycarbonylamino-3-(4-nitro-naphthalen-1-yl)-propionic acid 2-trimethylsilanyl-ethyl ester

30

To a mixture of 2-methoxycarbonylamino-3-(4-nitro-naphthalen-1-yl)-propionic acid (0.35 g, 1.1 mmol), pyridine (0.78 mL) and 2-trimethylsilylethanol (0.18 mL, 1.25 mmol, 1.1 eq) in acetonitrile (1.1 mL) cooled in an ice bath was added dicyclohexylcarbodiimide (0.25 g, 1.21 mmol). The mixture was stirred cold for 1 hour, placed in the refrigerator for 14 hours. The reaction mixture was filtered, concentrated under reduced pressure and purified

35

on silica gel eluting with heptane/ethyl acetate (4:1) to provide the titled compound. MS (ESI(-)) m/e 417 (M-H)⁻.

Example 7E

5 3-(4-amino-naphthalen-1-yl)-2-methoxycarbonylamino-propionic acid 2-trimethylsilyl-ethyl ester

A mixture of 2-methoxycarbonylamino-3-(4-nitro-naphthalen-1-yl)-propionic acid 2-trimethylsilyl-ethyl ester (1.1 g, 2.64 mmol), 10% palladium on C (0.056 g) in methanol (5 mL) was stirred under an atmosphere of hydrogen for 4 hours. The mixture was filtered
10 through diatomaceous earth and the filter cake washed with methanol (2 x 25 mL). The combined methanol was concentrated under reduced pressure to provide the titled compound. MS (ESI(+)) m/e 389 (M+H)⁺.

Example 7F

15 2-{4-[2-methoxycarbonylamino-2-(2-trimethylsilyl-ethoxycarbonyl)-ethyl]-naphthalen-1-ylamino}-benzoic acid

A mixture of 3-(4-amino-naphthalen-1-yl)-2-methoxycarbonylamino-propionic acid 2-trimethylsilyl-ethyl ester (0.93 g, 2.40 mmol), diphenyliodonium-2-carboxylate (1.22 g, 3.8 mmol, 1.5 eq) and copper(II) acetate (25 mg, 0.14 mmol, 0.06 eq) in N,N-dimethylformamide (25 mL) was heated to 100°C for 14 hours, then cooled to room
20 temperature. The mixture was acidified to a pH <3 with 1N HCl, extracted with ethyl acetate (3 x 35 mL). The combined organic layers were washed with 1N HCl (1 x 25 mL), water (1 x 25 mL), brine (1 x 25 mL), and dried (MgSO₄), filtered and concentrated under reduced
25 pressure. The residue was purified on silica gel eluting with 4:1 toluene/ethyl acetate to provide the titled compound. MS (ESI(-)) m/e 507 (M-H)⁻.

Example 7G

30 2-(tert-butoxyoxalyl-{4-[2-methoxycarbonylamino-2-(2-trimethylsilyl-ethoxycarbonyl)-ethyl]-naphthalen-1-yl}-amino)-benzoic acid

To a mixture of 2-{4-[2-methoxycarbonylamino-2-(2-trimethylsilyl-ethoxycarbonyl)-ethyl]-naphthalen-1-ylamino}-benzoic acid (0.7 g, 1.38 mmol) and diisopropylethylamine (0.57 mL) in methylene chloride (8 mL) at 0°C was slowly added
35 *tert*-butyl oxalyl chloride (538 mg, 3.61 mmol, 2.6 eq). The reaction was allowed to warm to room temperature over 1 hour and 4-(dimethylamino)pyridine (10 mg, 0.08 mmol, 0.06 eq) was added. The reaction was stirred for 14 hours, acidified to a pH <3 with 1N HCl,

extracted with ethyl acetate (3 x 30 mL). The organic layer was washed with 1N HCl (2 x 30 mL), water (1 x 20 mL), and brine (1 x 20 mL), dried (MgSO₄), filtered and concentrated. The residue was purified on silica gel eluting with toluene/ethyl acetate (10:1) to provide the titled product. MS (APCI(+)) m/e 637 (M+H)⁺.

5

Example 7H

2-(tert-butoxyoxalyl)-{4-[2-methoxycarbonylamino-2-(2-trimethylsilyl-ethyl)-naphthalen-1-yl]-amino}-benzoic acid benzhydryl ester

10

Diphenyldiazomethane was prepared according to the procedure described in *J. Org. Chem.* 1959, 24, 560, Miller, J. B.

To a mixture of 2-(tert-butoxyoxalyl)-{4-[2-methoxycarbonylamino-2-(2-trimethylsilyl-ethyl)-naphthalen-1-yl]-amino}-benzoic acid (0.3 g, 0.47 mmol) in acetone (3 mL) was added diphenyldiazomethane (134 mg, 0.69 mmol). The reaction mixture was stirred for 6 hours, acidified to a pH <3 with 1N HCl and extracted with ethyl acetate (3 x 20 mL). The organic layer was washed with 1N HCl (1 x 20 mL), water (2 x 15 mL), brine (1 x 30 mL), dried (MgSO₄), filtered and concentrated under reduced pressure. The concentrate was purified on silica gel eluting with 10:1 toluene/ethyl acetate to provide the titled product. MS (ESI(+)) m/e 820 (M+H₂O+H)⁺

20

Example 7I

2-(tert-butoxyoxalyl)-[4-(2-carboxy-2-methoxycarbonylamino-ethyl)-naphthalen-1-yl]-amino}-benzoic acid benzhydryl ester

25

To 2-(tert-butoxyoxalyl)-{4-[2-methoxycarbonylamino-2-(2-trimethylsilyl-ethyl)-naphthalen-1-yl]-amino}-benzoic acid benzhydryl ester (0.7 g, 0.87 mmol) in tetrahydrofuran (2.5 mL) cooled in an ice bath was added Tetrabutylammonium fluoride (1.5 mL, 1M in tetrahydrofuran). The mixture was stirred at 0°C for 1 hour, ambient temperature for 1 hour, diluted with 1N HCl (40 mL) and extracted with methylene chloride (3 x 30 mL). The combined organic layers were washed with 1N HCl (2 x 20 mL), water (1 x 20 mL), brine (2 x 20 mL), dried (MgSO₄), filtered and concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was purified on silica gel eluting with 10:1 toluene/ethyl acetate to provide the titled product. MS (ESI(+)) m/e 720 (M+H₂O+H)⁺

30

35

Example 7J

methyl N-{5-[(*tert*-butoxycarbonyl)amino]pentanoyl}-S-methyl-L-cysteinate

A mixture of N-Boc aminovaleric acid (2.5 g, 11.5 mmol), methionine methyl ester hydrochloride (2.8 g, 13.8 mmol), HOBT (2.3g, 13.8 mmol) in 30 mL of DMF was stirred at r.t. EDCI (3.1g, 16.1 mmol) was added, followed by addition of Et₃N till the pH of the mixture reaches 6. After stirring at r.t for 2 hours, the reaction was quenched with water, extracted with EtOAc (2x30 mL). The combined organic layer was washed with sat. NaHCO₃ and brine, dried over sodium sulfate and concentrated in vacuo. The resulting oil (4.57g) was used without any further purification.

Example 7K

methyl N-(5-aminopentanoyl)-S-methyl-L-cysteinate

The t-butyl carbamate from Example 7J was taken up in 4N HCl in dioxane and left at r.t. for 2 hours. The solvent was then removed under reduced pressure and the residue was evaporated with acetonitrile twice and pumped under high vacuum. The resulting amine hydrochloride salt was used directly for the coupling.

Example 7L

methyl N-(5-{[3-(4-{[2-[(benzhydryloxy)carbonyl]phenyl}]*tert*-butoxy(oxo)acetyl]amino}-1-naphthyl)-N-(methoxycarbonyl)alanyl]amino}pentanoyl)-L-methionine

The titled compound was prepared according to the procedure described in Example 1K, substituting the acid from Example 1J with the acid from Example 7I, and H-TYR(TBU)-OTBU HCL with the amine from Example 7K.

Example 7M

N-(5-{[3-(4-[(carboxycarbonyl)(2-carboxyphenyl)amino]-1-naphthyl)-N-(methoxycarbonyl)alanyl]amino}pentanoyl)-L-methionine

The titled compound was prepared according to the procedure described in Example 1L, substituting the ester from Example 1K with the ester from Example 7L. MS (ESI+) m/e 711 (M+H)⁺, ¹H NMR (300 MHz, DMSO-d₆) 1.23-1.64 (m, 4H), 1.71-2.22 (m, 4H), 2.03 (s, 3H), 2.35-2.56 (m, 2H), 2.97-3.59 (m, 7H), 4.00-4.67 (m, 2H), 6.70-7.80 (m, 6H), 7.86 (d, J = 6.3 Hz, 1H), 7.92-8.34 (m, 4H), 8.43 (d, J = 9.3 Hz, 1H).

Example 8

N-{5-[(*N*-acetyl-4-[(carboxycarbonyl)(2-carboxyphenyl)amino]-3-isopropylphenylalanyl)amino]pentanoyl}-L-methionine

5

Example 8A

methyl (2*Z*)-2-(acetylamino)-3-(4-amino-3-isopropylphenyl)acrylate

The titled compound was prepared according to the method described in Example 1B substituting 2-acetylamino-acrylic acid methyl ester for 2-acetylamino-acrylic acid benzyl ester and 4-bromo-2-isopropylaniline for 4-bromo-2-ethylaniline.

10

Example 8B

methyl *N*-acetyl-4-amino-3-isopropylphenylalaninate

methyl (2*Z*)-2-(acetylamino)-3-(4-amino-3-isopropylphenyl)acrylate (752 mg, 2.72 mmole) and 10% Pd/C (143 mg) stirred in ethanol (20 mL) under 1 atmosphere of hydrogen for 16 hours. The mixture was filtered through Celite and the filtrate was concentrated under reduced pressure to provide the titled compound.

15

Example 8C

methyl *N*-{5-[(*N*-acetyl-4-amino-3-isopropylphenylalanyl)amino]pentanoyl}methioninate

A mixture of methyl *N*-acetyl-4-amino-3-isopropylphenylalaninate in 1N NaOH (4 mL) and methanol (2mL) was stirred for 5 hours, concentrated under reduced pressure, taken up in a mixture of ethyl acetate and ethanol (3 x 30 mL, 1:1), dried (Na₂SO₄), filtered and concentrated under reduced pressure. MS (ESI) *m/z* = -263 (M-H)⁻. To a mixture of the residue (239 mg, 0.833 mmole), 2-(5-amino-pentanoylamino)-4-methylsulfanyl-butyric acid methyl ester (298 mg, 1.0 mmole), 1-[3-(dimethylamino)propyl]-3-ethylcarbodiimide hydrochloride (240 mg, 1.25 mmole) and *N*-hydroxybenzotriazole (169 mg, 1.25 mmole) in DMF (3 mL) was added triethyl amine (116 µL) and the mixture was stirred for 16 hours. The mixture was diluted with water and extracted with ethyl acetate (2 x 25 mL) then with chloroform (2 x 25 mL). The combined organics were dried (MgSO₄), filtered, concentrated under reduced pressure and purified on silica gel eluting with 30% methanol/ethyl acetate to provide the titled compound (316 mg). MS (ESI) *m/z* = +509(M+H)⁺, 531 (M+Na)⁺.

25

30

35

Example 8D

methyl *N*-{5-[(*N*-acetyl-4-(2-carboxyphenyl)amino-3-isopropylphenylalanyl)amino]pentanoyl}methioninate

The titled compound was prepared according to the method described in Example 7F by substituting methyl *N*-{5-[(*N*-acetyl-4-amino-3-isopropylphenylalanyl)amino]pentanoyl}methioninate for 2-methoxycarbonylamino-3-(4-nitro-naphthalen-1-yl)-propionic acid 2-trimethylsilanyl-ethyl ester.

5

Example 8E

N-{5-[(*N*-acetyl-4-[(carboxycarbonyl)(2-carboxyphenyl)amino]-3-isopropylphenylalanyl)amino]pentanoyl}-L-methionine

10 To a mixture of methyl *N*-{5-[(*N*-acetyl-4-(2-carboxyphenyl)amino-3-isopropylphenylalanyl)amino]pentanoyl}methioninate (78.7 mg, 0.125 mmole) and diisopropylethyl amine (54.5 μ L, 0.313 mmole) in dichloromethane (20 mL) at 0 °C was added ethyl oxalyl chloride (35.0 μ L, 0.313 mole) and DMF (20 μ L). The mixture was stirred for 4 hours, poured into water and methanol (35 mL, 1:1) and concentrated under
15 reduced pressure. The residue was dissolved in ethanol (3 mL), treated with 1 N NaOH (3 mL) and stirred for 1 hour. The mixture was adjusted to a pH =2 with trifluoroacetic acid and purified by reverse-phase HPLC (0% to 70% acetonitrile/aqueous 0.1% trifluoroacetic acid to provide the title compound. ¹H NMR (400MHz, DMSO- d₆) δ 6.8-8.2 (m, 6H), 4.25-4.5 (br m, 2H), 3.04-3.2 (m, 5H), 2.15-2.25 (m, 6H), 2.02 (s, 3H), 1.05-2.0 (m, 7H), 0.90 (t, 6H);
20 MS (ESI) *m/z* = -685 (M-H)⁻.

Example 9

N-{5-[(*N*-acetyl-4-[(carboxycarbonyl)(2-carboxy-5-chlorophenyl)amino]-3-ethylphenylalanyl)amino]pentanoyl}-L-methionine

25

Example 9A

diphenyliodonium-4-chloro-2-carboxylate

30 A mixture of 2-iodo-4-chlorobenzoic acid (11.3 g, 40.0 mmol) in concentrated sulfuric acid (40mL) was stirred at ambient temperature for 30 minutes, and then cooled to 10°C. K₂S₂O₈ (20.0g, 75 mmol) was added portion-wise. The reaction mixture was kept at 10°C for 20 minutes, benzene (35mL) was added, and the mixture stirred at ambient temperature for 16 hours. The mixture was poured into ice, and potassium iodide (20 g) was added to the suspension. The solid was collected, washed with water, added to 5 N NaOH (100mL),
35 stirred for 30 minutes and filtered to provide titled compound (13g). MS (ESI(+)) *m/e* 358,

360 (M+H)⁺; ¹H NMR (300 MHz, DMSO-d₆) δ 8.24 (d, 2H), 8.10 (d, 1H), 7.87-7.80 (m, 1H), 7.70-7.63 (m, 3H), 6.52 (d, 1H).

Example 9B

5 2-{4-[2-(acetylamino)-3-(allyloxy)-3-oxopropyl][*tert*-butoxy(oxo)acetyl]-2-ethylanilino}-4-chlorobenzoic acid

10 The titled compound was prepared according to the method described in Example 7 F-G by substituting 2-acetylamino-3-(4-amino-3-ethyl-phenyl)-propionic acid allyl ester for 3-(4-amino-naphthalen-1-yl)-2-methoxycarbonylamino-propionic acid 2-trimethylsilyl-ethyl ester and diphenyliodonium-5-chloro-2-carboxylate for diphenyliodonium-2-carboxylate.

Example 9C

15 (2*S*)-2-[(5-[[2-(acetylamino)-3-(4-[(carboxycarbonyl)(2-carboxy-4-chlorophenyl)amino]-3-ethylphenyl)propanoyl]amino}pentanoyl)amino]-4-(methylsulfanyl)butanoic acid

20 The titled compound was prepared according to the procedure described in Example 1F-L, substituting Example 9B for Example 1E and H-MET-OTBU HCL for H-TYR (TBU)-OTBU HCL. MS (ESI(+)) m/e 707, 708 (M+H)⁺; ¹H NMR (500 MHz, DMSO-d₆) δ 8.12-8.03 (m, 2H), 7.95-7.77 (m, 2H), 7.52-6.72 (m, 5H), 4.52-4.42 (m, 1H), 4.32-4.26 (m, 1H), 3.07-2.41 (m, 6H), 2.15-2.07 (m, 2H), 2.03 (s, 3H), 1.98-1.79 (m, 2H), 1.78, 1.75 (s, s, 3H), 1.50-1.42 (m, 2H), 1.40-1.30 (m, 2H), 1.28-0.91 (m, 3H).

Example 10

25 *N*-(5-[[*N*-acetyl-4-[(carboxycarbonyl)(2-carboxyphenyl)amino]-3-(2-hydroxyethyl)phenylalanyl]amino}pentanoyl)-L-methionine

Example 10A

30 2-(2-amino-5-bromo-phenyl)-ethanol

35 To a solution of 2-aminophenethyl alcohol (10.0g, 72.9 mmol) in acetic acid (60 mL) at 10 °C was added Br₂ (3.8 mL, 72.9 mmol) in acetic acid (5 mL). Additional acetic acid (30 mL) was added and the reaction was stirred for 1 hour. The mixture was filtered and the filter cake washed with diethyl ether. The solid was then partitioned between ethyl acetate and aqueous 3N NaOH. The organic layer was washed with brine, dried (Na₂SO₄), filtered and concentrated under reduced pressure to provide the titled compound (15.8 g).

Example 10B4-bromo-2-(1-methyl-1-trimethylsilylanyl-ethoxymethyl)-phenylamine

To a solution of 2-(2-amino-5-bromo-phenyl)-ethanol (15.8 g, 72.8 mmol) in anhydrous N,N-dimethylformamide (50 mL) was added imidazole (6.0 g, 88.1 mmol) and tert-butyl dimethylsilyl chloride (12.0 g, 79.6 mmol) sequentially. The resulting mixture was stirred at ambient temperature for 1.5 hour, partitioned between water and ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with water, brine, dried (Na₂SO₄), filtered, concentrated under reduced pressure and purified on silica gel with 10-15% ethyl acetate/hexanes to provide the titled compound (15.0 g, 62.3%). MS (ESI+) m/e 330, 332 (M+H)⁺.

Example 10C2-acetylamino-3-[4-amino-3-(2-hydroxy-ethyl)-phenyl]-propionic acid

The titled compound was prepared according to the procedure described in Example 1B-C, substituting 4-bromo-2-(1-methyl-1-trimethylsilylanyl-ethoxymethyl)-phenylamine for the 4-bromo-2-ethylalanine. The silyl protecting group came off during the hydrogenation process. MS (ESI+) m/e 381 (M+H)⁺.

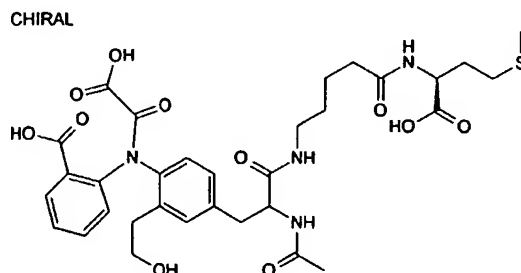
Example 10Dmethyl-[5-{[N-acetyl-4-amino-3-(2-hydroxyethyl)phenylalanyl]oxy} pentanoyl]-S-methyl-L-cysteinate

A solution of 2-acetylamino-3-[4-amino-3-(2-hydroxy-ethyl)-phenyl]-propionic acid (297 mg, 1.11 mmol), N-cyclohexylcarbodiimide-N'-methyl polystyrene HL resin (Nova Biochem; f = 1.52 mmol/g, 1.47 g, 2.22 mmol), HOBT (200mg, 1.22 mmol) in N,N-dimethylacetamide/CH₂Cl₂ (6 mL, 2:1) was stirred for 15 min, then methyl N-(5-aminopentanoyl)-S-methyl-L-cysteinate (400mg, 1.32mmol) (pre-neutralized with 188 µL of Et₃N) in N,N-dimethylacetamide/CH₂Cl₂ (4 mL, 2:1) was added. The resulting mixture was stirred at ambient temperature for 24 hours. Tris-(2-aminoethyl)-amine polystyrene HL resin (Nova Biochem, f = 4.06 mmol/g, 0.42g, 1.65 mmol) was added, the mixture was stirred for 2 hours, and then filtered through the celite, the solvent was removed under reduced pressure and the residue was purified on a Gilson preparative HPLC to provide the titled compound (383 mg, 67%). MS (ESI+) m/e 511 (M+H)⁺.

Example 10E

methyl-[5-{{N-acetyl-2-(ethyl ethyl oxalate)-4-[(ethoxycarboxycarbonyl)(2-carboxyphenyl)amino]-3-(2-hydroxyethyl)phenylalanyl}oxy} pentanoyl]-S-methyl- L-cysteinate

The titled compound was prepared according to the procedures described in Example 7F-G, substituting methyl-[5-{{N-acetyl-4-amino-3-(2-hydroxyethyl)phenylalanyl}oxy} pentanoyl]-S-methyl- L-cysteinate for 3-(4-amino-naphthalen-1-yl)-2-methoxycarbonylamino-propionic acid 2-trimethylsilanyl-ethyl ester, and ethyl oxalyl chloride for the *t*-butyl oxalyl chloride.



Example 10F

N-(5-{{N-acetyl-4-[(carboxycarbonyl)(2-carboxyphenyl)amino]-3-(2-hydroxyethyl)phenylalanyl}amino}pentanoyl)-L-methionine

To a stirred solution of methyl-[5-{{N-acetyl-2-(ethyl ethyl oxalate)-4-[(ethoxycarboxycarbonyl)(2-carboxyphenyl)amino]-3-(2-hydroxyethyl)phenylalanyl}oxy} pentanoyl]-S-methyl- L-cysteinate (300mg, 0.36 mmol) in MeOH (5 mL) was added 3N NaOH (0.96 mL, 2.88 mmol). The resulting mixture was stirred at ambient temperature for 4 hours, the mixture was acidified to a pH = 3 with concentrated HCl (12 M) and purified on a Gilson prep. HPLC to provide the titled compound as a light brown foam (105 mg, 0.15 mmol, 42%). MS (ESI+) m/e 687 (M-H)⁻, ¹H NMR (300 MHz, DMSO-*d*₆) 1.25-1.57 (m, 4H), 1.70-2.15 (m, 4H), 2.03 and 2.07 (s, 3H in total), 2.31-2.53 (m, 2H), 2.58-3.14 (m, 4H), 3.50-4.00 (overlapping m, 2H), 4.23-4.34 (m, 1H), 4.35-4.55 (m, 1H), 6.79 (dd, *J* = 3.9, 8.1 Hz, 1H), 7.00-7.59 (m, 5H), 7.79-8.16 (m, 4H).

Example 11

N-{{4-({N-acetyl-4-[(carboxycarbonyl)(2-carboxyphenyl)amino]-3-(2-hydroxyethyl)phenylalanyl}amino)methyl}cyclohexyl}carbonyl}-L-norleucine

Example 11A4-({[(benzyloxy)carbonyl]amino}methyl)cyclohexanecarboxylic acid

The titled compound was prepared according to the procedure described in *J. Med. Chem.* **1998**, *41*, 74-95; Curtin, M. L.; Davidsen, S. K.; Heyman, H. et al.

5

Example 11Bmethyl N-{{[4-({[(benzyloxy)carbonyl]amino}methyl)cyclohexyl]carbonyl}}-L-norleucinate

To a stirring mixture of 4-

10 ({{[(benzyloxy)carbonyl]amino}methyl)cyclohexanecarboxylic acid (750 mg, 2.57 mmol), TBTU (1.08 g, 3.34 mmol), and HOBT (55 mg, 0.03 mmol) in DMF (15 mL) was added the norleucine OMe HCl (411 mg, 2.83 mmol), followed by addition of triethylamine (898 μ L, 6.43 mmol). The resulting mixture was then stirred at ambient temperature for 2 hours, diluted with water and the resulting precipitate was collected by filtration and dried in a
15 vacuum oven to provide the titled compound (830 mg, 1.98 mmol, 77%).

Example 11C

20 methyl N-{{[4-(aminomethyl)cyclohexyl]carbonyl}}-L-norleucinate

A mixture of methyl N-{{[4-({[(benzyloxy)carbonyl]amino}methyl)cyclohexyl]carbonyl}}-L-norleucinate (830 mg, 1.98 mmol), 10% palladium on C (0.056 g) in methanol (10 mL) was stirred under an atmosphere of hydrogen for 4 hours. The mixture was filtered through diatomaceous earth and the filter cake washed with methanol (2 x 15 mL). The combined
25 methanol was concentrated under reduced pressure to provide the titled compound as a colorless solid.

Example 11D

30 N-{{[4-({[N-acetyl-4-{{(carboxycarbonyl)(2-carboxyphenyl)amino}}-3-(2-hydroxyethyl)phenylalanyl]amino}methyl)cyclohexyl]carbonyl}}-L-norleucine

The titled compound was prepared according to the procedures described in Example 10 D-F, substituting amine from Example 11C for the amine from Example 7K. MS (ESI+) m/e 711 (M+H)⁺, ¹H NMR (300 MHz, DMSO-d₆) 0.74-0.92 (m, 5H), 1.17-1.40 (m, 8H), 1.50-1.81
35 (m, 9H), 2.00-2.30 (m, 2H), 2.55-3.05 (m, 4H), 3.80-4.75 (m, 4H), 6.79 (dd, J = 3.9, 8.1 Hz, 1H), 7.00-7.59 (m, 5H), 7.79-8.16 (m, 4H).

Example 12

methyl 2-[4-({N-[(allyloxy)carbonyl]-4-[(carboxycarbonyl)(2-carboxyphenyl)amino]-L-phenylalanyl}amino)butoxy]-6-hydroxybenzoate

5

Example 12A

methyl 2-{4-[(*tert*-butoxycarbonyl)amino]butoxy}-6-hydroxybenzoate

To a round bottom flask was charged with *tert*-butyl 4-hydroxybutylcarbamate (400 mg, 2.1 mmol), 463 mg of 2,6-dihydroxybenzoate (463 mg, 2.7 mmol), and triphenylphosphine (777 mg, 3.0 mmol). The flask was vacuumed and back flushed with nitrogen (3x), capped with a rubber septum, and kept under positive nitrogen atmosphere. THF (anhydrous) was then added, followed by dropwise addition of DEAD (433 μ L, 2.7 mmol). Most of the starting material was consumed within the first 30 min. Solvent was then removed in vacuo, and the residue was purified on a silica gel chromatography eluting with 15-30% EtOAc in hexane to give the ether product (410 mg, 57%) as a colorless oil.

15

Example 12B

methyl 2-(4-aminobutoxy)-6-hydroxybenzoate

Methyl 2-{4-[(*tert*-butoxycarbonyl)amino]butoxy}-6-hydroxybenzoate (410 mg, 1.2 mmol) was treated with trifluoroacetic acid/dichloromethane (6 mL, 1:1/v:v) at ambient temperature for 3 hours, concentrated under reduced pressure and evaporated with acetonitrile twice to provide the titled amine as its trifluoroacetic acid salt (450 mg).

25

Example 12C

2-(trimethylsilyl)ethyl 4-[(2-carboxyphenyl)amino]-N-(*tert*-butoxycarbonyl)-L-phenylalaninate

The titled compound was prepared according to the procedure described for Example 7D-F, substituting *p*-nitro N-Boc phenyl alanine for 2-methoxycarbonylamino-3-(4-nitro-naphthalen-1-yl)-propionic acid.

35

Example 12D

2-(trimethylsilyl)ethyl 4-[(2-carboxyphenyl)amino]-L-phenylalaninate

2-(trimethylsilyl)ethyl 4-[(2-carboxyphenyl)amino]-*N*-(*tert*-butoxycarbonyl)-*L*-phenylalaninate (6.97 g, 13.9 mmol) was treated with 4N HCl (13.9 mL) in Dioxane (55.8 mmol) for one hour. The solvent was then removed under reduced pressure. The residue was precipitated with diethyl ether (2x 35 mL) to provide the titled compound as a light yellow solid (6.1 g, 100%).

Example 12E

2-(trimethylsilyl)ethyl *N*-[(allyloxy)carbonyl]-4-[(2-carboxyphenyl)amino]-*L*-phenylalaninate

The titled compound was prepared according to the procedure described for Example 7C, substituting 2-(trimethylsilyl)ethyl 4-[(2-carboxyphenyl)amino]-*L*-phenylalaninate for 3-(4-nitro-1-naphthyl)alanine, and allyl chloroformate for methylchloroformate.

Example 12F

N-[(allyloxy)carbonyl]-4-{2-[(benzhydryloxy)carbonyl]phenyl}[*tert*-butoxy(oxo)acetyl]amino}-*L*-phenylalanine

The titled compound was prepared according to the procedure described for Example 7G-I, substituting 2-(trimethylsilyl)ethyl *N*-[(allyloxy)carbonyl]-4-[(2-carboxyphenyl)amino]-*L*-phenylalaninate for 2-{4-[2-methoxycarbonylamino-2-(2-trimethylsilyl-ethoxycarbonyl)-ethyl]-naphthalen-1-ylamino}-benzoic acid.

Example 12G

methyl 2-{4-[(*N*-[(allyloxy)carbonyl]-4-{2-[(benzhydryloxy)carbonyl]phenyl}[*tert*-butoxy(oxo)acetyl]amino}-*L*-phenylalanyl)amino]butoxy}-6-hydroxybenzoate

To a stirring mixture of *N*-[(allyloxy)carbonyl]-4-{2-[(benzhydryloxy)carbonyl]phenyl}[*tert*-butoxy(oxo)acetyl]amino}-*L*-phenylalanine (100 mg, 0.147 mmol), TBTU (67 mg, 0.206 mmol), and HOBt (3 mg, 0.02 mmol) in DMF (2 mL) was added methyl 2-(4-aminobutoxy)-6-hydroxybenzoate, followed by addition of triethylamine (75 μ L, 0.53 mmol). The resulting mixture was then stirred at ambient temperature for 2 hours, diluted with the addition of water. The crude product was extracted with ethyl acetate (2x 10 mL). The combined organic layer were washed with aqueous NaHCO₃ (2 x 25 mL) and brine (2 x 25 mL), dried (Na₂SO₄), filtered and concentrated under reduced pressure. The resulting residue was purified on an AllTech sep-pak to provide the titled compound (89 mg, 68%).

Example 12H

methyl 2-[4-({N-[(allyloxy)carbonyl]-4-[(carboxycarbonyl)(2-carboxyphenyl)amino]-L-phenylalanyl}amino)butoxy]-6-hydroxybenzoate

5

A mixture methyl 2-{4-[(N-[(allyloxy)carbonyl]-4-{2-[(benzhydryloxy)carbonyl]phenyl}[*tert*-butoxy(oxo)acetyl]amino}-L-phenylalanyl]amino)butoxy}-6-hydroxybenzoate (89 mg, 0.10 mmol), 20 mg of resorcinol, and trifluoroacetic acid (1.5 mL) in methylene chloride (2.0 mL) was stirred for 5 hours, concentrated under reduced pressure. The crude product was purified on a Gilson preparative HPLC to provide the titled compound as a white powder (35 mg, 0.052 mmol, 52%). MS (ESI+) *m/e* 678 (M+H)⁺, ¹H NMR (300 MHz, DMSO-*d*₆) 1.40-1.66 (m, 4H), 2.68-2.83 (m, 1H), 2.83-2.98 (m, 1H), 2.98-3.15 (m, 2H), 3.72 (s, 3H), 3.90 (t, *J* = 5.85 Hz, 1H), 4.09-4.12 (m, 1H), 4.33-4.41 (m, 2H), 5.08 (d, *J* = 10.8 Hz, 1H), 5.18 (d, *J* = 18.0 Hz, 1H), 5.70-5.90 (m, 1H), 6.47 (d, *J* = 8.7 Hz, 1H), 7.25 (d, *J* = 8.7 Hz, 1H), 7.29 (d, *J* = 8.7 Hz, 1H), 7.36 (d, *J* = 8.7 Hz, 1H), 7.38-7.66 (m, 3H), 7.93-8.03 (m, 2H), 9.92 (s, 1H).

15

Example 13

methyl 2-{4-[(N-acetyl-4-[(carboxycarbonyl)(2-carboxyphenyl)amino]-3-ethylphenylalanyl]amino)butoxy}-6-hydroxybenzoate

20

Example 13A

N-acetyl-4-{2-[(benzhydryloxy)carbonyl][(benzyloxy)(oxo)acetyl]anilino}-3-ethylphenylalanine

25

The titled compound was prepared according to the procedure described for Example 1G, substituting the benzyl oxalyl chloride for *tert*-butyl oxalyl chloride.

Example 13B

methyl 2-[(5-{[2-(acetylamino)-3-(4-{2-[(benzhydryloxy)carbonyl][(benzyloxy)(oxo)acetyl]anilino}-3-ethylphenyl)propanoyl]amino}pentyl)oxy]-6-hydroxybenzoate

30

Methyl 2-(4-aminobutoxy)-6-hydroxybenzoate (42 mg, 0.12 mmol), *N*-acetyl-4-{2-[(benzhydryloxy)carbonyl][(benzyloxy)(oxo)acetyl]anilino}-3-ethylphenylalanine (70 mg, 0.1 mmol), 2-(1H-benzotriazole-1-yl)-1,1,3,3-tetramethyluronium tetrafluoroborate (32 mg, 0.1 mmol) and diisopropylethylamine (70 μ L, 0.4 mmol) in *N,N*-dimethylformamide (1 mL) was stirred at ambient temperature overnight, diluted with ethyl acetate and washed with

35

aqueous NaHCO₃ (1 x 30 mL), brine (2 x 30 mL), dried (MgSO₄), filtered and concentrate under reduced pressure. The residue was purified on silica gel eluting with ethyl acetate to provide of titled compound 54 mg.

5

Example 13C

2-[4-[2-(acetylamino)-3-({4-[3-hydroxy-2-(methoxycarbonyl)phenoxy]butyl}amino)-3-oxopropyl](carboxycarbonyl)-2-ethylanylino]benzoic acid

Methyl 2-[(5-{{2-(acetylamino)-3-(4-{2-[(benzhydryloxy)carbonyl] [(benzyloxy)(oxo)acetyl]anilino}-3-ethylphenyl)propanoyl]amino}pentyl)oxy]-6-hydroxybenzoate and 10% Pd-C (5 mg) in methanol (3 mL) was stirred under an atmosphere of hydrogen at ambient temperature overnight to provide the titled compound 33mg. MS (ESI(+)) m/e 664 (M+H)⁺; ¹H NMR (500 MHz, DMSO-d₆) 9.90 (s, 1H), 8.13-7.78 (m, 3H), 7.58-6.75 (m, 7H), 6.47 (d, 2H), 4.53-4.40 (m, 1H), 3.95-3.85 (m, 2H), 3.72 (s, 3H), 3.10-2.56 (m, 6H), 1.78, 1.75 (s, s, 3H), 1.62-1.52 (m, 2H), 1.50-1.40 (m, 2H), 1.26-0.91 (m, 3H).

15

Example 14

methyl 2-{2-[2-({N-[(allyloxy)carbonyl]-4-[(carboxycarbonyl)(2-carboxyphenyl)amino]-L-phenylalanyl}amino)ethoxy]ethoxy}-6-hydroxybenzoate

The titled compound was prepared according to the procedure described for Example 12A-B and Example 12G-H, substituting [2-(2-Hydroxy-ethoxy)-ethyl]-carbamic acid tert-butyl ester for *tert*-butyl 4-hydroxybutylcarbamate. MS (ESI+) m/e 694 (M+H)⁺, ¹H NMR (300 MHz, DMSO-d₆) 2.61-2.83 (m, 2H), 2.83-2.99 (m, 2H), 3.15-3.28 (m, 2H), 3.38-3.51 (m, 2H), 3.67-3.73 (m, 2H), 3.76 (s, 3H), 3.98-4.09 (m, 2H), 4.09-4.24 (m, 1H), 4.28-4.42 (m, 2H), 5.06 (d, *J* = 10.8 Hz, 1H), 5.16 (d, *J* = 17.4 Hz, 1H), 5.63-5.88 (m, 1H), 6.53 (d, *J* = 8.7 Hz, 1H), 6.77 (d, *J* = 8.7 Hz, 1H), 7.10-7.66 (m, 7H), 7.85 and 7.93 (d, *J* = 8.7 Hz, 1H in total), 8.03 (t, *J* = 5.25 Hz, 1H), 10.19 (s, 1H).

30

Example 15

methyl 2-[(5-{{N-acetyl-3-(4-[(carboxycarbonyl)(2-carboxyphenyl)amino]-1-naphthyl)-L-alanyl]amino}pentyl)oxy]-6-hydroxy-4-methylbenzoate

35

Example 15A

methyl 3-(4-amino-1-naphthyl)-N-(*tert*-butoxycarbonyl)-L-alaninate

A mixture of (*S*)-3-iodo-*N*-*tert*-butoxycarbonylalanine methyl ester (6.58g, 20.0 mmol) and zinc dust (7.5g, 119 mmol) in DMF (20 mL) under an atmosphere of N₂ was heated to 60 °C for 5 minutes then allowed to cool and settle in order to facilitate transfer of the organozinc reagent.

5 A solution of 4-bromo-1-naphthylamine (4.44 g, 20.0 mmol), tri-*o*-tolylphosphine (1.16 g, 3.81 mmol), and palladium(II)acetate (220 mg, 0.980 mmol) in DMF (10 mL) under N₂ was stirred for 30 minutes, then the solution of the organozinc reagent previously prepared was added via syringe. The mixture was heated at 60 °C for 1 hour, the mixture was poured into water (150 mL), and extracted with diethyl ether (3 x 50 mL). The combined
10 organic layers were washed with water (1 x 50 mL), brine (1 x 25 mL), dried (MgSO₄), filtered, and concentrated under reduced pressure to an oil. The oil was purified on silica gel, eluting with 30% to 40% ethyl acetate hexanes, to provide the titled compound (2.4 g, 35%).

15

Example 15B

3-(4-amino-1-naphthyl)-*N*-(*tert*-butoxycarbonyl)-L-alanine

To a solution of methyl 3-(4-amino-1-naphthyl)-*N*-(*tert*-butoxycarbonyl)-L-alaninate (2.4 g, 7.0 mmol) in methanol (10 mL) was added 8M aqueous NaOH (1.5 mL, 12 mmol) and the mixture was stirred at ambient temperature for 45 minutes. The mixture was
20 concentrated under reduced pressure, taken up in water (5 mL) and extracted with diethyl ether (2 x 10 mL). The aqueous layer was then shaken with ethyl acetate (30 mL) and 1M HCl (13 mL). The layers were separated, and the aqueous layer was extracted with ethyl acetate (1 x 20 mL). The combined ethyl acetate layers were washed with brine (1 x 5 mL), dried (MgSO₄), filtered, and concentrated under reduced pressure to provide the titled
25 compound (1.9 g, 83%).

Example 15C

5-hydroxypentyl-[3-(4-amino-1-naphthyl)-*N*-(*tert*-butoxycarbonyl)]-L-alaninamide

30 To a solution of 3-(4-amino-1-naphthyl)-*N*-(*tert*-butoxycarbonyl)-L-alanine (725 mg, 2.19 mmol) in DMF (5 mL) was added 1(3-(dimethylamino)propyl)-3-ethylcarbodiimide hydrochloride (1.75 g (9.12 mmol), 5-amino-1-pentanol (250 mg, 2.42 mmol), 3-hydroxy-1,2,3-benzotriazin-4(3*H*)-one (360 mg, 2.21 mmol) and triethylamine (500 µL, 3.59 mmol). The reaction was stirred at ambient temperature for 17 hours, concentrated under reduced
35 pressure to a thick oil. The oil was taken up in aqueous NaHCO₃ solution (10 mL) and water (10 mL). The mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate, and the combined ethyl acetate layers dried (MgSO₄), filtered, and concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was purified

on silica gel, eluting with 95:5 ethyl acetate/methanol to provide the titled compound (535 mg, 59%).

5

Example 15D3-(4-amino-1-naphthyl)-N²-(*tert*-butoxycarbonyl)-N¹-(5-{{*tert*-butyl(dimethyl)silyl}oxy}pentyl)-L-alaninamide

To a solution of 5-hydroxypentyl-[3-(4-amino-1-naphthyl)-N-(*tert*-butoxycarbonyl)]-L-alaninamide (525 mg, 1.26 mmol) in DMF (3 mL) was added *tert*-butyldimethylsilyl chloride (256 mg, 1.70 mmol), and imidazole (154 mg, 2.26 mmol). The mixture was stirred at ambient temperature for 10 minutes, poured into water (15 mL) and extracted with diethyl ether (3 x 10 mL). The combined ether layers were washed with water (1 x 10 mL), brine (1 x 10 mL), dried (MgSO₄), filtered, and concentrated under reduced pressure to an oil. The oil was purified on silica gel, eluting with 40% ethyl acetate/hexanes to provide the titled compound (600 mg, 90%).

15

Example 15E3-(4-(benzhydryl 2-{{ethoxy(oxo)acetyl}amino} benzoate)-1-naphthyl)-N²-(*tert*-butoxycarbonyl)-N¹-(5-{{*tert*-butyl(dimethyl)silyl}oxy}pentyl)-L-alaninamide

20

To 3-(4-amino-1-naphthyl)-N²-(*tert*-butoxycarbonyl)-N¹-(5-{{*tert*-butyl(dimethyl)silyl}oxy}pentyl)-L-alaninamide (600 mg, 1.13 mmol) was added diphenyliodonium-2-carboxylate monohydrate (460 mg, 1.35 mmol), copper(II)acetate (8 mg, 0.04 mmol) and 2-propanol (5 mL). The mixture was heated to reflux under an atmosphere of N₂ for 2 hours, cooled and concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was taken up in 1M HCl (10 mL) and extracted with diethyl ether (3 x 10 mL). The combined ether layers was washed with brine (1 x 10 mL), dried (MgSO₄), filtered, and concentrated under reduced pressure.

25

To an ice cold solution of the residue in DMF (3 mL) was added triethylamine (450 µL, 3.53 mmol) and ethyl oxalyl chloride (200 µL, 2.07 mmol). The mixture was allowed to come to ambient temperature over 30 minutes and 8M NH₄OH (6 mL) was added. To the mixture was added 1M HCl (10 mL) and then the aqueous suspension was extracted with diethyl ether (3 x 10 mL). The combined ether layers were washed with brine (1 x 10 mL), dried (MgSO₄), filtered, and concentrated under reduced pressure to a foam.

30

A solution of the foam in ethyl acetate (5 mL) and diphenyldiazomethane (240 mg, 1.23 mmol) was stirred for 24 hours, concentrated under reduced pressure and purified on

35

silica gel eluting with 40% ethyl acetate/ hexanes to provide the titled compound (354 mg, 34% overall).

5

Example 15F

5-hydroxypentyl 3-(4-{2-[(benzhydryloxy)carbonyl]phenyl}[ethoxy(oxo)acetyl]amino)-1-naphthyl)-N-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)-L-alaninamide

To a solution of 3-(4-(benzhydryl 2-[(ethoxy(oxo)acetyl]amino)benzoate)-1-naphthyl)-N²-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)-N¹-(5-[(tert-butyl(dimethyl)silyl]oxy)pentyl)-L-alaninamide (278 mg, 0.303 mmol) in THF (2 mL) was added tetrabutylammonium fluoride hydrate (108 mg, 0.404 mmol). The reaction was stirred at ambient temperature for 3 hours and concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was taken up in water (5 mL) and extracted with ethyl acetate (2 x 5 mL). The combined ethyl acetate layers were washed with brine (1 x 1 mL), dried (MgSO₄), filtered, and concentrated under reduced pressure to an oil.

The oil was purified on silica gel eluting with 40% ethyl acetate/hexanes to 100% ethyl acetate to provide the titled compound (170 mg, 70%).

20

Example 15G

methyl 2-[(5-{[N-acetyl-3-(4-[(carboxycarbonyl)(2-carboxyphenyl)amino]-1-naphthyl)-L-alanyl]amino}pentyl)oxy]-6-hydroxy-4-methylbenzoate

To a reclosable pressure tube containing methyl 2,6-dihydroxy-4-methylbenzoate (10 mg, 0.055 mmol) was added a solution of 5-hydroxypentyl 3-(4-{2-[(benzhydryloxy)carbonyl]phenyl}[ethoxy(oxo)acetyl]amino)-1-naphthyl)-N-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)-L-alaninamide (33 mg, 0.041 mmol) and triphenylphosphine (15 mg, 0.057 mmol) in THF (0.2 mL). Diethylazodicarboxylate (10 mL, 0.064 mmol) was added, the vessel sealed and the reaction was stirred for 30 minutes. The reaction was opened, diluted with several drops of hexanes (barely to the point of cloudiness), then purified on a prepacked silica gel column (5 mL) eluting with 50% ethyl acetate/hexanes to provide the desired compound as an oil.

To the oil was added CH₂Cl₂ (1 mL), three drops of anisole and trifluoroacetic acid (1 mL). The reaction was stirred for 5 minutes and concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was taken up in 2M NaOH (1 mL), extracted with diethyl ether (1 x 1 mL). To the aqueous solution was added six drops of acetic anhydride and the reaction was swirled briefly. To the mixture was added five drops of 2M NaOH and purified by reverse phase HPLC eluting with 0% to 70% acetonitrile/0.1% aqueous trifluoroacetic acid to provide (3.6 mg, 12%) of the titled compound. ¹H NMR (500 MHz, d₆-DMSO) mixture of rotamers, δ

9.95 (s, 1H), 8.27 (m, 2H), 8.18 (m, 1H), 7.95 (m, 1H), 7.61 (m, 2H), 7.46 (m, 1H), 7.40 (m, 1H), 7.31 (m, 3H), 6.55 (s, 1H), 6.33 (s, 1H), 6.29 (s, 1H), 4.55 (m, 1H), 3.85 (m, 2H), 3.71 (s, 3H), 3.01 (m, 1H), 2.21 (s, 3H), 2.07 (s, 3H), 1.76 (m, 3H), 1.56 (m, 2H), 1.26 (m, 6H); MS (ESI) m/z 714 $[M+H]^+$, 736 $[M+Na]^+$.

5

Example 16

methyl 4-{4-[(*N*-acetyl-4-[(carboxycarbonyl)(2-carboxyphenyl)amino]-3-ethylphenylalanyl)amino]butoxy}-2-hydroxy-1,1'-biphenyl-3-carboxylate

10

Example 16A

methyl 3-bromo-2,6-dihydroxybenzoate

To a mixture of methyl-2,6-dihydroxybenzoate (1.68g, 10.0 mmol) in dichloromethane (10 mL) was added acetic acid (1 mL), followed by drop-wise addition of bromine (515 μ L, 10.0 mmol) in dichloromethane (5 mL). The reaction mixture was stirred at ambient temperature for 1 hour, concentrated under reduced pressure, co-evaporated with ethyl acetate (2x). The resulting solid was triturated with hexane/ethyl acetate and re-crystallized from hot hexane/ethyl acetate to provide the titled compound (1.45 g). MS (ESI(-)) m/e 244, 246 $(M-H)^+$; 1H NMR (300 MHz, DMSO- d_6) δ 10.45 (s, 1H), 10.19 (s, 1H), 7.46 (d, 1H), 6.41 (d, 1H), 3.84 (s, 3H).

20

Example 16B

methyl 3-bromo-6-{4-[(*tert*-butoxycarbonyl)amino]butoxy}-2-hydroxybenzoate

The titled compound was prepared according to the procedure described for Example 12A, substituting the methyl 3-bromo-2,6-dihydroxybenzoate for 2,6-dihydroxybenzoate. MS (ESI(+)) m/e 418, 420 $(M+H)^+$; 1H NMR (300 MHz, DMSO- d_6) δ 10.44 (s, 1H), 7.47 (d, 1H), 6.82 (t, 1H), 6.64 (d, 1H), 3.88 (t, 2H), 3.79 (s, 3H), 2.95 (q, 2H), 1.69-1.43 (m, 4H), 1.38 (s, 9H).

25

30

Example 16C

methyl 4-{4-[(*tert*-butoxycarbonyl)amino]butoxy}-2-hydroxy[1,1'-biphenyl]-3-carboxylate

To a mixture of methyl 3-bromo-6-{4-[(*tert*-butoxycarbonyl)amino]butoxy}-2-hydroxybenzoate (56 mg, 0.134 mmol), tetrakis(triphenylphosphine) palladium (7 mg), 2M Na_2CO_3 (134 μ L, 0.268 mmol) in toluene (1 mL) and ethanol (0.5 mL) was added phenylboronic acid (18 mg, 0.147 mmol). The reaction mixture was heated to 80 °C in a sealed tube overnight, taken up in ethyl acetate, washed with aqueous $NaHCO_3$, dried ($MgSO_4$), filtered and concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was purified on

35

silica gel with hexane/ethyl acetate to provide the titled compound (23 mg). MS (ESI(+)) m/e 416 (M+H)⁺.

Example 16D

5 methyl 4-(4-aminobutoxy)-2-hydroxy[1,1'-biphenyl]-3-carboxylate

The titled compound was prepared according to the procedure described for Example 12B, substituting methyl 4-{4-[(*tert*-butoxycarbonyl)amino]butoxy}-2-hydroxy[1,1'-biphenyl]-3-carboxylate for *tert*-butyl 4-hydroxybutylcarbamate.

10 Example 16E

N-acetyl-4-{2-[(benzhydryloxy)carbonyl][(benzyloxy)(oxo)acetyl]anilino}-3-ethylphenylalanine

The titled compound was prepared according to the procedure described in Example 13B-C, substituting methyl 4-(4-aminobutoxy)-2-hydroxy[1,1'-biphenyl]-3-carboxylate for
15 methyl 2-(4-aminobutoxy)-6-hydroxybenzoate. MS (ESI(+)) m/e 740(M+H)⁺; ¹H NMR (500 MHz, DMSO-d₆) 10.11 (s, 1H), 8.13-7.78 (m, 3H), 7.58-6.96 (m, 11H), 6.74 (d, 2H), 4.48-4.38 (m, 1H), 3.93 (s, 2H), 3.78 (s, 3H), 3.50-2.56 (m, 6H), 1.77, 1.75 (s, s, 3H), 1.25-0.91 (m, 7H).

20

Example 17

2-[4-({*N*-acetyl-4-[(carboxycarbonyl)(2-carboxyphenyl)amino]-3-ethylphenylalanyl}amino)butoxy]-6-hydroxybenzoic acid

25

Example 17A

benzyl 2-(4-aminobutoxy)-6-hydroxybenzoate

The titled compound was prepared according to the procedure described for Example 12A-B, substituting benzyl 2,6-dihydroxybenzoate for methyl 2,6-dihydroxybenzoate.

30

Example 17B

2-[4-({*N*-acetyl-4-[(carboxycarbonyl)(2-carboxyphenyl)amino]-3-ethylphenylalanyl}amino)butoxy]-6-hydroxybenzoic acid

The titled compound was prepared according to the procedure described in Example 13B-C, substituting benzyl 2-(4-aminobutoxy)-6-hydroxybenzoate for methyl 2-(4-aminobutoxy)-6-hydroxybenzoate. MS (ESI(+)) m/e 650 (M+H)⁺; ¹H NMR (500 MHz, DMSO-d₆) 10.33 (s, 1H), 8.13-7.78 (m, 3H), 7.58-6.75 (m, 7H), 6.47 (d, 2H), 4.53-4.40 (m,

35

1H), 3.93-3.85 (m, 2H), 3.10-2.56 (m, 6H), 1.78, 1.75 (s, s, 3H), 1.62-1.52 (m, 2H), 1.50-1.40 (m, 2H), 1.26-0.91 (m, 3H).

5

Example 18

3-({5-[(N-acetyl-3-{4-[(carboxycarbonyl)(2-carboxyphenyl)amino]-1-naphthyl})-L-alanyl]amino}pentyl)oxy)-2-naphthoic acid

The titled compound was prepared according to the procedure described in Example 15G, substituting 2-hydroxy-3-naphthoic acid methyl ester for methyl 2,6-dihydroxy-4-methylbenzoate. ¹H NMR (500 MHz, *d*₆-DMSO) mixture of rotamers, δ 8.45-8.42 (m, 1H), 8.35-8.30 (m, 1H), 8.26-8.21 (m, 1H), 8.18 (s, 1H), 8.06-7.95 (m, 2H), 7.92 (d, 1H, *J* = 8.2 Hz), 7.84 (m, 2H), 7.67-7.47 (m, 5H), 7.17 (m, 1H), 6.83 (t, 1H, *J* = 6.4 Hz), 4.70-4.58 (m, 1H), 4.07 (t, 1H, *J* = 6.4 Hz), 4.03 (t, 1H, *J* = 6.4 Hz), 3.59-2.99 (m, 4H), 2.07 (s, 3H), 1.80-1.63 (m, 4H), 1.39-1.16 (m, 5H); MS (ESI) *m/z* 720 [M+H]⁺, 742 [M+Na]⁺.

15

Example 19

methyl 6-{4-[(N-acetyl-4-[(carboxycarbonyl)(2-carboxyphenyl)amino]-3-ethylphenylalanyl)amino]butoxy}-3-bromo-2-hydroxybenzoate

20

Example 19A

methyl 6-(4-aminobutoxy)-3-bromo-2-hydroxybenzoate

The titled compound was prepared according to the procedure described for Example 12A-B, substituting 3-bromo-2,6-dihydroxybenzoate for 2,6-dihydroxybenzoate.

25

Example 19B

methyl 6-{4-[(N-acetyl-4-{2-[(benzhydryloxy)carbonyl]phenyl}[(benzyloxy)(oxo)acetyl]amino}-3-ethylphenylalanyl)amino]butoxy}-3-bromo-2-hydroxybenzoate

30

The titled compound was prepared according to the procedure described in Example 13B, substituting methyl 6-(4-aminobutoxy)-3-bromo-2-hydroxybenzoate for methyl 2-(4-aminobutoxy)-6-hydroxybenzoate.

Example 19C

35

methyl 6-{4-[(N-acetyl-4-[(carboxycarbonyl)(2-carboxyphenyl)amino]-3-ethylphenylalanyl)amino]butoxy}-3-bromo-2-hydroxybenzoate

Methyl 6-{4-[(*N*-acetyl-4-{2-[(benzhydryloxy)carbonyl]phenyl} [(benzyloxy)(oxo)acetyl]amino)-3-ethylphenylalanyl]amino]butoxy}-3-bromo-2-hydroxybenzoate was treated with trifluoroacetic acid (500 μ L)/methylene chloride (500 μ L) at ambient temperature for 4 hours, concentrated under reduced pressure and co-evaporated with acetonitrile (2 x 10mL). The residue was taken up in 1N NaOH (3 eq.)/methanol (250 μ L)/THF (250 μ L), stirred for 3 hours and concentrated under reduced pressure to provide the titled compound. MS (ESI (+)) *m/e* 742, 743 (*M*+H)⁺; ¹H NMR (500 MHz, DMSO-*d*₆) 8.08-7.92 (m, 2H), 7.45-6.94 (m, 7H), 6.64 (d, 2H), 4.43-4.38 (m, 1H), 3.90-3.86 (m, 2H), 3.78 (s, 3H), 3.10-3.05 (m, 2H), 2.90-2.85 (m, 1H), 2.75-2.62(m, 3H), 1.76(s, 3H), 1.64-1.58 (m, 2H), 1.52-1.45 (m, 2H), 1.18 (t, 3H).

Example 20

2-((carboxycarbonyl){4-[3-({4-[3-hydroxy-2-(methoxycarbonyl)phenoxy]butyl}amino)-3-oxopropyl]-((carboxycarbonyl)(2-carboxyphenyl)amino)-1-naphthyl}amino)benzoic acid

Example 20A

3-(4-amino-1-naphthyl)propanoic acid

To a mixture of 4-bromo-1-naphthylamine (4.44 g, 20.0 mmol), potassium acetate (6.28 g, 64.0 mmol), tetrabutylammonium chloride hydrate (6.1 g, 22 mmol), palladium(II)acetate (224 mg, 1.0 mmol) and tri-*o*-tolylphosphine (1.22 g, 4.0 mmol) was added DMF (60 mL) and methyl acrylate (2.3 mL, 25 mmol). The reaction was heated to 100 °C under N₂ for 2 hours, poured into water (300 mL) and extracted with diethyl ether (3 x 50 mL). The combined ether layers were washed with brine (1 x 50 mL), dried (MgSO₄), filtered, and concentrated under reduced pressure. The product was purified on silica gel eluting with 30% ethyl acetate/hexanes to provide the titled compound 2.5 g, 55%).

A solution of 3-(4-amino-naphthalen-1-yl)-acrylic acid methyl ester (2.5 g, 11.0 mmol) and 10% Pd-C (320 mg) in methanol (100 mL) under an atmosphere of H₂ for 18 hours then filtered. To the filtrate was added 19M NaOH (3 mL), and the resulting mixture heated to reflux for 30 minutes. The mixture was concentrated under reduced pressure taken up in water (10 mL) and the pH adjust to 4 with 12M HCl. The mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate (3 x 20 mL), then the combined ethyl acetate layers were washed with brine (1 x 10 mL), dried (MgSO₄), filtered, and concentrated under reduced pressure to provide the titled compound (2.4 g, 100%).

Example 20Bmethyl 2-(4-([3-(4-amino-1-naphthyl)propanoyl]amino)butoxy)-6-hydroxybenzoate

A mixture of 3-(4-amino-1-naphthyl)propanoic acid (160 mg, 0.74 mmol), 2-(4-amino-butoxy)-6-hydroxy-benzoic acid methyl ester hydrochloride (200 mg, 0.72 mmol),
5 [(benzotriazol-1-yloxy)-dimethylamino-methylene]-dimethyl-ammonium tetrafluoroborate (TBTU) (275 mg, 0.857 mmol) and *N,N*-diisopropylethylamine (0.4 mL, 2.3 mmol) in DMF (3 mL) was stirred at ambient temperature for 1.5 hour, poured into water (10 mL) and extracted with ethyl acetate (3 x 20 mL). The combined ethyl acetate layers were washed with water (2 x 5 mL), dried (MgSO₄), filtered, and concentrated under reduced pressure to
10 an oil. The product was purified on silica gel, eluting with 75% ethyl acetate/hexanes to provide the titled compound (165 mg, 52%).

Example 20C

15 2-((carboxycarbonyl){4-[3-({4-[3-hydroxy-2-(methoxycarbonyl)phenoxy]butyl}amino)-3-oxopropyl]-1-naphthyl}amino)benzoic acid

To a solution of methyl 2-(4-([3-(4-amino-1-naphthyl)propanoyl]amino)butoxy)-6-hydroxybenzoate (82 mg, 0.19 mmol) in DMF (1 mL) was added diphenyliodonium-2-carboxylate monohydrate (75 mg, 0.22 mmol) and copper(II)acetate (3 mg, 0.017 mmol).
20 The mixture was heated to 100 °C under N₂ for 2 hours then cooled to ambient temperature followed by the addition of triethylamine (200 µL, 1.43 mmol), and ethyl oxalyl chloride (100 µL, 0.893 mmol). The mixture was stirred for 45 minutes at ambient temperature followed by the addition of 0.33M NaOH (12 mL) was stirred for an additional 10 minutes. The mixture adjusted to a pH = 3 by the addition of 1M HCl (6ml), and extracted with ethyl
25 acetate (3 x 3 mL). The combined ethyl acetate layers were washed with brine (1 x 3 mL), dried (MgSO₄), filtered, and concentrated under reduced to an oil. The oil was purified on reverse phase HPLC, eluting with 0% to 70% acetonitrile/0.1% aqueous trifluoroacetic acid gradient to provide the titled compound (46 mg, 39%). ¹H NMR (300 MHz, *d*₆-DMSO) mixture of rotamers, δ 9.92 (s, 1H), 8.43 (d, 1H, *J* = 8.1 Hz), 8.21-7.89 (m, 3H), 7.85 (dd, 1H, *J* = 1.9, 7.3 Hz), 7.66-7.25 (m, 9H), 7.15 (t, 1H, *J* = 8.5 Hz), 6.85 (dd, 1H, *J* = 0.7, 7.5 Hz), 6.47 (d, 2H, *J* = 8.5 Hz), 3.93-3.87 (m, 2H), 3.72 (s, 3H), 3.71 (s, 3H, minor), 3.35-3.25 (m, 2H), 3.11-3.02 (m, 2H), 2.54-2.45 (m, 2H), 1.63-1.40 (m, 4H); MS (ESI) *m/z* 629 [M+H]⁺, 646 [M+NH₄]⁺.
30

35

Example 21

methyl 2-(4-{[4-[(carboxycarbonyl)(2-carboxyphenyl)amino]-N-(methoxycarbonyl)-L-phenylalanyl]amino}butoxy)-6-hydroxy-4-pentylbenzoate

5

Example 21 A

2,6-dihydroxy-4-pentylbenzoic acid

A mixture of olivetol (2.1 g, 12 mM), KHCO_3 (4.9 g, 39 mM), and solid CO_2 (1.95 g, 44.3 mM) in glycerol (5.1 mL) was heated in a stainless steel bomb to 145 °C at 220 psi for 5 hours. The reaction was cooled and removed from the reaction vessel using water to transfer. The aqueous solution was carefully acidified to a pH = 3 with 1 N HCl to give a precipitate. The solids were filtered, washed with water and dried to give the desired product. MS (ESI(-)) m/e 223 (M-H)⁺; ¹H NMR (300 MHz, CDCl_3) δ 9.40 (bs, 2H), 6.37 (s, 2H), 2.52 (t, 2H), 1.66-1.57 (m, 2H), 1.37-1.29 (m, 4H), 0.93-0.87 (m, 3H).

15

Example 21 B

methyl 2,6-dihydroxy-4-pentylbenzoate

A solution of 2,6-dihydroxy-4-pentylbenzoic acid (2.0 g, 8.9 mM) in ether was treated with a 0.3 M solution of diazomethane in ether (30 mL) and stirred for 10 minutes. Nitrogen was bubbled through the solution for 10 minutes and then glacial acetic acid (4 drops). The reaction was concentrated under reduced pressure and purified by chromatography (5 % ethyl acetate in hexanes) to give the desired product. MS (ESI(-)) m/e 237 (M-H)⁺; ¹H NMR (300 MHz, CDCl_3) δ 9.62 (bs, 2H), 6.33 (s, 2H), 4.06 (s, 3H), 2.50 (t, 2H), 1.64-1.55 (m, 2H), 1.34-1.27 (m, 4H), 0.92-0.87 (m, 3H).

25

Example 21C

methyl 2-(4-{[4-[(carboxycarbonyl)(2-carboxyphenyl)amino]-N-(methoxycarbonyl)-L-phenylalanyl]amino}butoxy)-6-hydroxy-4-pentylbenzoate

The tilted compound was prepared according to the procedure described for Example 22 F-G, substituting the salicylate from Example 22E with the salicylate from Example 21B. MS (ESI(+)) m/e 722 (M+H)⁺; ¹H NMR (300 MHz, $\text{DMSO}-d_6$) δ 0.85 (t, J = 6.75 Hz, 3H), 1.17-1.39 (m, 4H), 1.39-1.70 (m, 6H), 2.46 (t, J = 8.7 Hz, 2H), 2.63-2.82 (m, 1H), 2.82-2.96 (m, 1H), 2.96-3.14 (m, 2H), 3.70 (s, 3H), 3.93 (s, 3H), 3.83-3.95 (m, 2H), 4.06-4.20 (m, 1H), 6.30 (s, 1H), 6.33 (s, 1H), 7.12-7.69 (m, 8H), 7.86 (t, J = 7.8 Hz, 1H), 7.97 (t, J = 5.1 Hz, 1H), 9.91 (s, 1H).

35

Example 22

methyl 2-(4-{{4-[(carboxycarbonyl)(2-carboxyphenyl)amino]-N-(methoxycarbonyl)-L-phenylalanyl]amino}butoxy)-6-hydroxy-4-methoxybenzoate

Example 22A

5 N-(methoxycarbonyl)-4-nitro-L-phenylalanine

To a stirred mixture of H-phe(4-NO₂)-OH (11.4 g, 50.0 mmol) and NaOH (2.0 g, 50.0 mmol) in water (450 mL) at 0°C was added methylchloroformate (4.25 mL, 55.0 mmol) and NaOH (2.2 g in 45 mL water) simultaneously. 1N NaOH was then added to adjust PH ~9. The reaction mixture was stirred at ambient temperature overnight, the pH was adjust
10 to 10 by adding more aqueous NaOH and the mixture was extracted with ether (2 x 75 mL). The aqueous layer was acidified to a pH = 3 with 5N HCl, and extracted with ethyl acetate (2 x 400mL). The combined ethyl acetate layers were dried (MgSO₄), filtered and concentrated under reduced pressure to provide the titled compound (12.3 g). MS (ESI (-)) m/e 267 (M-H)⁺; ¹H NMR (300 MHz, DMSO-d₆) 8.16 (d, 2H), 7.60-7.52 (m, 3H), 4.28-4.18 (m, 1H),
15 3.47 (s, 3H), 3.26-3.17 (m, 1H), 3.05-2.92 (m, 1H).

Example 22B

4-amino-N-(methoxycarbonyl)-L-phenylalanine

A mixture of material from Example 22A and 10% Pd-C (500 mg) in methanol (250
20 mL) was stirred under an atmosphere of hydrogen at ambient temperature for 4 hours. The mixture was filtered through celite and the filtrate concentrated under reduced pressure to provide the titled compound. MS (ESI (-)) m/e 237 (M-H)⁺; ¹H NMR (300 MHz, DMSO-d₆) 7.32 (d, 1H), 6.88 (d, 2H), 6.45 (d, 2H), 4.05-3.96 (m, 1H), 3.47 (s, 3H), 3.49-3.40 (m, 2H), 2.89-2.80 (m, 1H), 2.67-2.57 (m, 1H).

25

Example 22C

4-{{2-[(benzhydryloxy)carbonyl]phenyl}[(benzyloxy)(oxo)acetyl]amino}-N-(methoxycarbonyl)-L-phenylalanine

The titled compound was prepared according to the procedure described for Example
30 1D-G, substituting 4-amino-N-(methoxycarbonyl)-L-phenylalanine for N-acetyl-4-amino-3-ethylphenylalanine and the benzyl oxalyl chloride for *tert*-butyl oxalyl chloride. MS (ESI(-)) m/e 685 (M-H)⁺; ¹H NMR (500 MHz, DMSO-d₆) 8.12-8.03 (m, 1H), 7.71-6.87 (m, 23H), 4.97-4.82 (m, 2H), 4.15-4.08 (m, 1H), 3.46, 3.42 (s, s, 3H), 3.07-2.96 (m, 1H), 2.83-2.73 (m, 1H).

35

Example 22D

N-(4-hydroxybutyl)-[*N*-(methoxycarbonyl)-4-{2-[(benzhydryloxy)carbonyl]phenyl}[(benzyloxy)(oxo)acetyl]amino}]-L-phenylalaninamide

The titled compound was prepared according to the procedure described in Example 13B, substituting 4-{2-[(benzhydryloxy)carbonyl]phenyl} [(benzyloxy)(oxo)acetyl]amino}-
 5 *N*-(methoxycarbonyl)-L-phenylalanine for *N*-acetyl-4-{2-[(benzhydryloxy)carbonyl} [(benzyloxy)(oxo)acetyl]anilino}-3-ethylphenylalanine and aminobutanol for methyl 2-(4-aminobutoxy)-6-hydroxybenzoate. MS (ESI(+)) *m/e* 758 (*M*+H)⁺; ¹H NMR (300 MHz, DMSO-*d*₆) 8.13-8.02(m, 1H), 7.92 (t, 1H), 7.71-6.87 (m, 23H), 4.97-4.82 (m, 2H), 4.40-4.35 (m, 1H), 4.19-4.08 (m, 1H), 3.42, 3.39 (s, s, 3H), 3.07-2.96 (m, 2H), 2.94-2.62 (m, 2H),
 10 1.42-1.34 (m, 4H).

Example 22Emethyl 2,6-dihydroxy-4-methoxybenzoate

The titled compound was prepared according to the procedure described for Example
 15 12A, substituting 2, 4, 6-trihydroxybenzoate for 2,6-dihydroxybenzoate and methanol for *tert*-butyl 4-hydroxybutylcarbamate.

Example 22F

methyl 2-(4-{4-{2-[(benzhydryloxy)carbonyl]phenyl}[(benzyloxy)(oxo)acetyl]amino}-*N*-
 20 (methoxycarbonyl)-L-phenylalanyl]amino}butoxy)-6-hydroxy-4-methoxybenzoate

The titled compound was prepared according to the procedure described for Example 12A, substituting methyl 2,6-dihydroxy-4-methoxybenzoate for 2,6-dihydroxybenzoate and
N-(4-hydroxybutyl)-[*N*-(methoxycarbonyl)-4-{2-[(benzhydryloxy)carbonyl]phenyl} [(benzyloxy)(oxo)acetyl]amino}]-L-phenylalaninamide for *tert*-butyl 4-
 25 hydroxybutylcarbamate.

Example 22G

methyl 2-(4-{4-{[(carboxycarbonyl)(2-carboxyphenyl)amino]-*N*-(methoxycarbonyl)-L-
 30 phenylalanyl]amino}butoxy)-6-hydroxy-4-methoxybenzoate

A mixture of methyl 2-(4-{4-{2-[(benzhydryloxy)carbonyl]phenyl} [(benzyloxy)(oxo)acetyl]amino}-*N*-(methoxycarbonyl)-L-phenylalanyl]amino}butoxy)-6-
 hydroxy-4-methoxybenzoate and 10% Pd-C (0.1 g) in methanol (25 mL) was stirred under an
 atmosphere of hydrogen at ambient temperature for 16 hours. The mixture was filtered
 through celite and the filtrate concentrated under reduced pressure to provide the titled
 35 compound. MS (ESI(+)) *m/e* 682 (*M*+H)⁺; ¹H NMR (500 MHz, DMSO-*d*₆) 10.66, 10.67 (s,
 s, 1H), 8.03-7.96 (m, 1H), 7.90-7.83 (m, 1H), 7.63-7.15 (m, 8H), 6.07-6.05 (m, 2H), 4.18-

4.10 (m, 1H), 3.95-3.89 (m, 2H), 3.73 (s, 3H), 3.43 (s, 3H), 3.15-3.02 (m, 2H), 2.95-2.86 (m, 1H), 2.78-2.68 (m, 1H), 1.68-1.56 (m, 2H), 1.54-1.47 (m, 2H).

5

Example 23

methyl 3-(4-{[4-[(carboxycarbonyl)(2-carboxyphenyl)amino]-N-(methoxycarbonyl)-L-phenylalanyl]amino}butoxy)-5-hydroxy-1,1'-biphenyl-4-carboxylate

10

Example 23 A1,1'-biphenyl-3,5-diol

A mixture of 5-phenyl-1,3-cyclohexanedione (2.5 g, 13 mM) and 10 % Pd/C (0.5 g) in phenyl ether (30 mL) was heated to 230 °C over 30 minutes and held at 230 °C for 2.5 hours. The reaction was cooled, taken up in CH₂Cl₂ and filtered through Dicalite. The filtrate was concentrated and the residue purified by chromatography (CH₂Cl₂, then 5-10 % EtOAc/CH₂Cl₂) to give the desired product.
MS (ESI(-)) m/e 185 (M-H)⁺.

20

Example 23 B3,5-dihydroxy-1,1'-biphenyl-4-carboxylic acid

The desired product was prepared by substituting 1,1'-biphenyl-3,5-diol for olivetol in Example 20 A. MS (ESI(-)) m/e 229 (M-H)⁺; ¹H NMR (300 MHz, CDCl₃) δ 9.58 (bs, 2H), 7.63-7.58 (m, 2H), 7.46-7.38 (m, 4H), 6.79 (s, 2H).

25

Example 23 Cmethyl 3,5-dihydroxy-1,1'-biphenyl-4-carboxylate

The desired product was prepared by substituting 3,5-dihydroxy-1,1'-biphenyl-4-carboxylic acid for 2,6-dihydroxy-4-pentylbenzoic acid in Example 20 B.
MS (ESI(-)) m/e 243 (M-H)⁺; ¹H NMR (300 MHz, CDCl₃) δ 9.69 (bs, 2H), 7.61-7.57 (m, 2H), 7.47-7.35 (m, 3H), 6.76 (s, 2H), 4.05 (s, 3H).

35

Example 23 D

methyl 3-(4-{[4-{[2-[(benzhydryloxy)carbonyl]phenyl]-(benzyloxy)(oxo)acetyl]amino}-N-(methoxycarbonyl)-L-phenylalanyl]amino}butoxy)-5-hydroxy-1,1'-biphenyl-4-carboxylate

A solution of methyl 3,5-dihydroxy-1,1'-biphenyl-4-carboxylate (31 mg, 0.13 mM), the core alcohol (made by Gang Liu) (95 mg, 0.13 mM), and Ph₃P (41 mg, 1.6 mM) in THF (5 mL) was treated with DEAD (20 µL, 1.6 mM) and stirred for 2 hours. The reaction was concentrated and purified by chromatography (CH₂Cl₂, then 10 % EtOAc/CH₂Cl₂) to give the desired product.

MS (ESI(-)) m/e 983 (M-H)⁺.

Example 23 E

methyl 3-(4-{[4-{[2-carbonylphenyl][(benzyloxy)(oxo)acetyl]amino}-N-(methoxycarbonyl)-L-phenylalanyl]amino}butoxy)-5-hydroxy-1,1'-biphenyl-4-carboxylate

A solution of methyl 3-(4-{[4-{[2-
[(benzhydryloxy)carbonyl]phenyl][(benzyloxy)(oxo)acetyl]amino}-N-(methoxycarbonyl)-L-phenylalanyl]amino}butoxy)-5-hydroxy-1,1'-biphenyl-4-carboxylate (120 mg, 0.12 mM) in methanol (25 mL) was stirred for 16 hours over 10 % Pd/C under an atmosphere of H₂. The mixture was filtered, concentrated under reduced pressure and purified by preparative HPLC to give the desired product. MS (ESI(+)) m/e 728 (M+H)⁺; ¹H NMR (300 MHz, DMSO-d₆) δ 10.15 (bs, 1H), 8.13-8.06 (m, 1H), 7.99-7.06 (m, 1H), 7.73-7.12 (m, 13H), 6.99-6.89 (m, 2H), 6.74-6.71 (m, 2H), 4.13-4.08 (m, 1H), 4.06-4.02 (m, 2H), 3.75 (s, 3H), 3.43 and 3.42 (2s, 3H total), 3.12-3.06 (m, 2H), 2.89-2.83 (m, 1H), 2.76-2.65 (m, 1H), 1.64-1.58 (m, 2H), 1.53-1.47 (m, 2H).

Example 24

methyl 2-(4-{[4-{[(carboxycarbonyl)(2-carboxyphenyl)amino]-N-(methoxycarbonyl)-L-phenylalanyl]amino}butoxy)-6-hydroxy-4-methylbenzoate

The titled compound was prepared according to the procedure described in Example 22F-G, substituting 4-methyl-2,6-dihydroxybenzoate for methyl 2,6-dihydroxy-4-methoxybenzoate. MS (ESI(+)) m/e 666 (M+H)⁺; ¹H NMR (500 MHz, DMSO-d₆) 9.93 (s, 1H), 7.96-7.76 (m, 2H), 7.61-7.13 (m, 8H), 6.16-6.14 (m, 2H), 4.18-4.10 (m, 1H), 3.94-3.87 (m, 2H), 3.71 (s, 3H), 3.44 (s, 3H), 3.12-3.00 (m, 2H), 2.95-2.84 (m, 1H), 2.80-2.68 (m, 1H), 2.21 (s, 3H), 1.64-1.54 (m, 2H), 1.54-1.45 (m, 2H).

Example 25

methyl 2-(4-{[3-(4-{[(carboxycarbonyl)(2-carboxyphenyl)amino]-3-ethylphenyl)propanoyl]amino}butoxy)-6-hydroxybenzoate

Example 25Abenzyl (2E)-3-(4-aminophenyl)acrylate

The titled compound was prepared according to the procedure described in Example 1B, substituting benzylacrylate for 2-acetylamino-benzylacrylate. MS (ESI(+)) m/e 282 (M+H)⁺; ¹H NMR (300 MHz, DMSO-d₆) 7.52 (d, 1H), 7.40-7.24 (m, 7H), 6.59 (d, 1H), 6.29 (d, 1H), 5.57 (s, 2H), 5.28 (s, 2H), 2.48 (q, 2H), 1.12 (t, 3H).

Example 25B3-(4-{2-[(benzhydryloxy)carbonyl]phenyl}[(benzyloxy)(oxo)acetyl]amino}phenyl)propanoic acid

The titled compound was prepared according to the procedure described for Example 1C-G, substituting benzyl (2E)-3-(4-aminophenyl)acrylate for benzyl (2E)-2-(acetylamino)-3-(4-amino-3-ethylphenyl)-2-propenoate. MS (ESI(+)) m/e 642(M+H)⁺.

Example 25C2-((carboxycarbonyl){2-ethyl-4-[3-{4-[3-hydroxy-2-(methoxycarbonyl)phenoxy]butyl}amino)-3-oxopropyl]phenyl}amino)benzoic acid

The titled compound was prepared according to the procedure described in Example 13B-C, substituting 3-(4-{2-[(benzhydryloxy)carbonyl]phenyl}[(benzyloxy)(oxo)acetyl]amino}phenyl)propanoic acid for N-acetyl-4-{2-[(benzhydryloxy)carbonyl][(benzyloxy)(oxo)acetyl]anilino}-3-ethylphenylalanine. MS (ESI(+)) m/e 607 (M+H)⁺; ¹H NMR (500 MHz, DMSO-d₆) 9.90 (s, 1H), 7.85-7.73 (m, 2H), 7.54-6.80 (m, 7H), 6.47 (d, 2H), 3.95-3.89 (m, 2H), 3.72 (d, 3H), 3.12-3.04 (m, 2H), 2.87-2.75 (m, 2H), 2.69-2.55 (m, 2H), 2.42-2.32 (m, 2H), 1.65-1.54 (m, 2H), 1.52-1.42 (m, 2H), 1.29-0.91 (m, 3H).

Example 26

methyl 2-(4-{4-[(carboxycarbonyl)(2-carboxyphenyl)amino]-N-(methoxycarbonyl)-L-phenylalanyl]amino}butoxy)-4-chloro-6-hydroxybenzoate

Example 26 A5-chlorobenzene-1,3-diol

A solution of 5-chloro-1,3-dimethoxybenzene (5.41 g, 31.3 mM) in methylene chloride (75 mL) at -78 °C was stirred with a 1M solution of BBr₃ in methylene chloride (63

mL) for 45 minutes. The reaction was allowed to warm to room temperature overnight and diluted with water (75 mL). The layers were separated and the aqueous layer washed two times with methylene chloride. The aqueous layer was acidified with 1N HCl and extracted 3 times with ethyl acetate. The combined organic layers were washed with 1N sodium thiosulfate (1 x 35 mL) and water (1 x 25 mL). The organic layer was dried (MgSO₄), filtered and concentrated under reduced pressure and purified by chromatography (methylene chloride/acetone) to provide the titled compound. MS (ESI(-)) m/e 143 (M-H)⁺; ¹H NMR (300 MHz, CDCl₃) δ 6.45 (d, 2H), 6.25 (t, 1H), 5.41 (bs, 2H).

Example 26 B

4-chloro-2,6-dihydroxybenzoic acid

The desired product was prepared by substituting 5-chlorobenzene-1,3-diol for olivetol in Example 20 A. MS (ESI(-)) m/e 187 (M-H)⁺.

Example 26 C

methyl 4-chloro-2,6-dihydroxybenzoate

The desired product was prepared by substituting 4-chloro-2,6-dihydroxybenzoic acid for 2,6-dihydroxy-4-pentylbenzoic acid in Example 20 B. MS (ESI(-)) m/e 233 (M-H)⁺; ¹H NMR (300 MHz, CDCl₃) δ 9.75 (bs, 2H), 6.52 (s, 2H), 4.09 (s, 2H).

Example 26 D

methyl 2-(4-{[4-[(carboxycarbonyl)(2-carboxyphenyl)amino]-N-(methoxycarbonyl)-L-phenylalanyl]amino}butoxy)-4-chloro-6-hydroxybenzoate

The desired product was prepared by substituting methyl 4-chloro-2,6-dihydroxybenzoate for methyl 3,5-dihydroxy-1,1'-biphenyl-4-carboxylate in Example 23 D-E. MS (ESI(-)) m/e 684 (M-H)⁺.

Example 27

methyl 2-(4-{[4-[(carboxycarbonyl)(2-carboxyphenyl)amino]-N-(methoxycarbonyl)-L-phenylalanyl]amino}butoxy)-6-hydroxybenzoate

The titled compound was prepared according to the procedure described in Example 22, substituting 2,6-dihydroxybenzoate for methyl 2,6-dihydroxy-4-methoxybenzoate. MS (ESI(+)) m/e 652 (M+H)⁺; ¹H NMR (500 MHz, DMSO-d₆) 9.90 (s, 1H), 7.96-7.64 (m, 2H),

7.63-7.13 (m, 8H), 6.50-6.45 (m, 2H), 4.18-4.10 (m, 1H), 3.94-3.87 (m, 2H), 3.72 (s, 3H), 3.44 (s, 3H), 3.12-3.00 (m, 2H), 2.95-2.86 (m, 1H), 2.80-2.68 (m, 1H), 1.64-1.54 (m, 2H), 1.52-1.44 (m, 2H).

5

Example 28

4-[(carboxycarbonyl)(2-carboxyphenyl)amino]-N-{4-[2-(aminocarbonyl)-3-hydroxyphenoxy]butyl}-N-(methoxycarbonyl)-L-phenylalaninamide

The titled compound was prepared according to the procedure described in Example 22, substituting 2,6-dihydroxybenzamide for Example 22E. MS (ESI(+)) m/e 637 (M+H)⁺; ¹H NMR (500 MHz, DMSO-d₆) 13.99 (bs, 1H), 8.13 (s, 1H), 8.02-7.95 (m, 2H), 7.88-7.82 (m, 1H), 7.63-7.16 (m, 8H), 6.58-6.45 (m, 2H), 4.18-4.06 (m, 3H), 3.43 (s, 3H), 3.12-3.04 (m, 2H), 2.95-2.86 (m, 1H), 2.80-2.68 (m, 1H), 1.78-1.69 (m, 2H), 1.54-1.45 (m, 2H).

15

Example 29 methyl 3-(4-{[4-[(carboxycarbonyl)(2-carboxyphenyl)amino]-N-(methoxycarbonyl)-L-phenylalanyl]amino}butoxy)-1-hydroxy-2-naphthoate

20

Example 29A

1,3-dihydroxy-2-naphthoic acid methyl ester

A mixture of 1,3-dihydroxynaphthalene (480 mg, 3.00 mmol) and potassium bicarbonate (750 mg, 7.5 mmol) in glycerol (1 mL) was heated under 1 atmosphere of CO₂ to 115 °C for 5 hours then poured into 0.5M HCl (20 mL) and extracted with diethyl ether (3 x 5 mL). The combined ether layers were washed with brine (1 x 5 mL), dried (MgSO₄) and filtered. This solution was then treated with a solution of diazomethane in diethyl ether until bubbling ceased. The ether was removed under reduced pressure and purified on silica gel eluting with 20% ethyl acetate/hexanes to provide (75 mg, 11%).

30

Example 29B

methyl 3-hydroxy-1-(methoxymethoxy)-2-naphthoate

To a solution of 1,3-dihydroxy-2-naphthoic acid methyl ester 109 mg (0.53 mmol) in DMF (2 mL) was added triethylamine (200 µL, 1.43 mmol) and chloromethyl methyl ether (MOMCl) (125 µL, 1.65 mmol). The mixture was stirred at ambient temperature for 16 hours, poured into water (10 mL) and extracted with diethyl ether (2 x 5 mL). The combined ether layers were washed with 1M HCl (1 x 3 mL), brine (1 x 5 mL), dried (MgSO₄), filtered,

35

and concentrated under reduced pressure to an oil. The oil was purified on silica gel eluting with 20% ethyl acetate/hexanes to provide the titled compound (83 mg, 60%).

5

Example 29C

methyl 3-{4-[(*tert*-butoxycarbonyl)amino]butoxy}-1-(methoxymethoxy)-2-naphthoate

To a mixture of methyl 3-hydroxy-1-(methoxymethoxy)-2-naphthoate (41 mg, 0.16 mmol), triphenylphosphine (41 mg, 0.16 mmol) and *N*-(*tert*-butoxycarbonyl)-4-hydroxy-1-butylamine (33 mg, 0.17 mmol) in THF (0.5 mL) was added diethylazodicarboxylate (30 μ L, 0.19 mmol). The mixture was stirred at ambient temperature for 30 minutes, concentrated under reduced pressure and purified on silica gel eluting with 30% ethyl acetate/hexanes to provide the titled compound (28 mg, 41%).

15

Example 29D

methyl 3-(4-aminobutoxy)-1-hydroxy-2-naphthoate

To a mixture of methyl 3-{4-[(*tert*-butoxycarbonyl)amino]butoxy}-1-(methoxymethoxy)-2-naphthoate (28 mg, 0.064 mmol) was added 4M HCl in dioxane (1 mL). The mixture was stirred at ambient temperature for 30 minutes, concentrated under reduced pressure to provide the titled compound (19 mg, 100%) as its hydrochloride salt.

25

Example 29E

methyl 3-(4-{4-{2-[(benzhydryloxy)carbonyl]phenyl}[(benzyloxy)(oxo)acetyl]amino}-*N*-(methoxycarbonyl)-L-phenylalanyl]amino}butoxy)-1-hydroxy-2-naphthoate

To a mixture of methyl 3-(4-aminobutoxy)-1-hydroxy-2-naphthoate (18 mg, 0.055 mmol), 2-{benzyloxyoxalyl-[4-(2-carboxy-2-methoxycarbonylamino-ethyl)-phenyl]-amino}-benzoic acid benzhydryl ester (40 mg, 0.058 mmol), 1-(3-(dimethylamino)propyl)-3-ethylcarbodiimide hydrochloride (13 mg, 0.068 mmol) and 3-hydroxy-1,2,3-benzotriazin-4(3*H*)-one (13 mg, 0.080 mmol) in DMF (0.2 mL) was added triethylamine (1 drop). The reaction was stirred at ambient temperature for 5 hours, concentrated under reduced pressure and purified on silica gel eluting with 75% ethyl acetate/hexanes to provide the titled compound (32 mg, 61%).

35

Example 29F

methyl 3-(4-{4-[(carboxycarbonyl)(2-carboxyphenyl)amino]-*N*-(methoxycarbonyl)-L-phenylalanyl]amino}butoxy)-1-hydroxy-2-naphthoate

To methyl 3-(4-{{4-{{2-
 [(benzhydryloxy)carbonyl]phenyl}[(benzyloxy)(oxo)acetyl]amino}-N-(methoxycarbonyl)-L-
 phenylalanyl]amino}butoxy)-1-hydroxy-2-naphthoate (32 mg, 0.033 mmol) in dioxane (1
 mL) under N₂ was added 10% Pd-C (5 mg) followed by 60% HClO₄ (1 drop). The reaction
 5 was stirred under 1 atmosphere of H₂ for 4 hours and filtered. The solution was applied to a
 reverse phase HPLC column and purified by eluting with 0% to 70% gradient of
 acetonitrile/0.1% aqueous trifluoroacetic acid to provide the titled compound (13 mg, 56%).
¹H NMR (500 MHz, *d*₆-DMSO) mixture of rotamers, δ 11.02 (bs, 1H), 8.12 (d, 1H, *J* = 8.4
 Hz), 7.98 (bt, 1H, *J* = 5.6 Hz), 7.93 (d, 1H, *J* = 7.8 Hz), 7.85 (dd, 1H, *J* = 1.4, 7.6 Hz), 7.73
 10 (d, 1H, *J* = 8.1 Hz), 7.62-7.56 (m, 1H), 7.52-7.48 (m, 1H), 7.44-7.39 (m, 1H), 7.36-7.23 (m,
 6H), 7.19-7.18 (m, 1H), 7.08 (s, 1H, minor), 6.97 (s, 1H, minor), 6.89-6.88 (m, 1H), 4.20-
 4.12 (m, 1H), 4.05-4.02 (m, 2H), 3.84 (s, 3H), 3.44 (s, 3H), 3.18-3.12 (m, 2H), 2.95-2.89 (m,
 1H), 2.79-2.71 (m, 1H), 1.75-1.67 (m, 2H), 1.60-1.54 (m, 2H); MS (ESI) *m/z* 702 [M+H]⁺,
 724 [M+Na]⁺.

15

Example 30

4-[(carboxycarbonyl)(2-carboxyphenyl)amino]-N-(4-{3-hydroxy-2-
 [(methylamino)carbonyl]phenoxy}butyl)-N-(methoxycarbonyl)-L-phenylalaninamide

20

Example 30A

2,6-dihydroxy-N-methylbenzamide

The mixture of 2,6-dihydroxybenzoate (168 mg, 1.0 mmol) and 2 M methylamine in
 THF (3 mL, 6.0 mmol) in a sealed tube was heated to 100°C overnight. The reaction mixture
 25 was then concentrated under reduced pressure and purified on silica gel eluting with
 hexane/ethyl acetate (1:1) to provide titled compound (67 mg). MS (ESI(+)) *m/e* 168
 (M+H)⁺; ¹H NMR (300 MHz, DMSO-*d*₆) 12.57(bs, 2H), 8.82 (bs, 1H), 7.14 (t, 1H), 6.35 (d,
 2H), 2.85(d, 3H).

30

Example 30B

4-[(carboxycarbonyl)(2-carboxyphenyl)amino]-N-(4-{3-hydroxy-2-
 [(methylamino)carbonyl]phenoxy}butyl)-N-(methoxycarbonyl)-L-phenylalaninamide

The titled compound was prepared according to the procedure described in Example
 22, substituting 2,6-dihydroxy N-methylbenzamide for methyl 2,6-dihydroxy-4-
 35 methoxybenzoate. MS (ESI(+)) *m/e* 651 (M+H)⁺; ¹H NMR (500 MHz, DMSO-*d*₆) 13.57
 (bs, 1H), 8.96, 8.44(s, s, 1H), 8.02-7.95 (m, 1H), 7.88-7.82 (m, 1H), 7.63-7.16 (m, 8H), 6.58-

6.45 (m, 2H), 4.18-4.07 (m, 3H), 3.43 (s, 3H), 3.12-3.04 (m, 2H), 2.95-2.86 (m, 1H), 2.85 (d, 3H), 2.80-2.68 (m, 1H), 1.78-1.69 (m, 2H), 1.54-1.45 (m, 2H).

5

Example 31

methyl 2-(4-{[3-(4-[(carboxycarbonyl)(2-carboxyphenyl)amino]-1-naphthyl)-1-methylpropyl]amino}butoxy)-6-hydroxybenzoate

10

Example 31A

2-[(4-bromo-naphthalen-1-yl)-tert-butoxyoxalyl-amino]-benzoic acid benzhydryl ester

The titled compound was prepared according to the procedure described in Example 7F-H, substituting 4-bromo-naphthalen-1-yl-amine for the aniline from Example 7E. MS (ESI(+)) m/e 653, 655 (M+NH₄)⁺.

15

Example 31B

2-{tert-butoxyoxalyl-[4-(3-oxo-butyl)-naphthalen-1-yl]-amino}-benzoic acid benzhydryl ester

To a mixture of 2-[(4-bromo-naphthalen-1-yl)-tert-butoxyoxalyl-amino]-benzoic acid benzhydryl ester (230mg, 0.36 mmol), Pd(OAc)₂ (4.0 mg, 0.018 mmol), P(o-tolyl)₃ (11 mg, 0.036 mmol) in anhydrous N,N-dimethylformamide (1.5 mL) in a pressure tube was added 3-buten-2-ol (47 µL, 0.54 mmol) and triethylamine (127 µL, 0.90mmol). The mixture was flushed with nitrogen for 3 minutes, capped and heated to 100 °C for 30 min. The reaction mixture was allowed to cool to ambient temperature, partitioned between ethyl acetate and water (75 mL, 1:1). The organic layer was washed with brine (2 x 25 mL), dried (Na₂SO₄), filtered, concentrated under reduced pressure and purified on an Alltech Sep-Pak eluting with 20-30% ethyl acetate/hexanes to provide the titled compound (180mg, 81%). MS (ESI(+)) m/e 645 (M+NH₄)⁺, ¹H NMR (300 MHz, DMSO-d₆) 1.40

25

30

Example 31C

A mixture of 2-{tert-butoxyoxalyl-[4-(3-oxo-butyl)-naphthalen-1-yl]-amino}-benzoic acid benzhydryl ester (81mg, 0.129 mmol) and amine from Example 12B (61 mg, 0.17 mmol) in anhydrous methanol (2.0 mL) was stirred at ambient temperature with Et₃N (24 µL,

35

0.129 mmol) for 3 hours. NaBH₄ (30 mg) was then added in portions over 30 minutes, stirred for an additional 2 hours and concentrated under reduced pressure to give a crude amine product which was used directly without any purification.

5

Example 31D

The titled compound was prepared according to the procedure described in Example 12H, substituting the ester from Example 31C for the ester from Example 12G. MS (ESI+) m/e 629 (M+H)⁺; ¹H NMR (300 MHz, DMSO-d₆) 1.39 (t, *J* = 6.45 Hz, 3H), 1.60-1.90 (m, 6H), 2.92-3.53 (m, 5H), 3.72 (m, 3H), 3.90-4.02 (m, 2H), 6.47 (d, *J* = 2.7 Hz, 1H), 6.50 (d, *J* = 2.7 Hz, 1H), 6.82-6.88 (m, 1H), 7.12-7.20 (m, 1H), 7.28-7.70 (m, 6H), 7.87 (dd, *J* = 2.7, 7.5 Hz, 1H), 8.14 (d, *J* = 9.0 Hz, 1H), 8.44 (d, *J* = 8.4 Hz, 1H), 9.94 (s, 1H).

15

Example 32

methyl 2-(4-([3-(4-[(carboxycarbonyl)(2-carboxyphenyl)amino]-1-naphthyl)propyl]amino)butoxy)-6-hydroxybenzoate

The titled compound was prepared according to the procedure described in Example 31B-D, substituting 3-buten-2-ol used in Example 31B with allyl alcohol. MS (ESI+) m/e 615 (M+H)⁺; ¹H NMR (300 MHz, DMSO-d₆) 1.60-1.90 (m, 6H), 2.77-3.58 (m, 6H), 3.72 (m, 3H), 3.90-4.02 (m, 2H), 6.09 (d, *J* = 2.7 Hz, 1H), 6.46 (d, *J* = 8.7 Hz, 1H), 6.83-7.93 (m, 9H), 7.98-8.22 (m, 1H), 8.33-8.53 (m, 1H), 9.94 (s, 1H).

25

Example 33

4-[(carboxycarbonyl)(2-carboxyphenyl)amino]-N-(4-{2-[(ethylamino)carbonyl]-3-hydroxyphenoxy}butyl)-N-(methoxycarbonyl)-L-phenylalaninamide

The titled compound was prepared according to the procedure described in Example 30A-B, substituting ethylamine for methylamine. MS (ESI(+)) m/e 665 (M+H)⁺; ¹H NMR (500 MHz, DMSO-d₆) 13.57 (bs, 1H), 8.50 (s, 1H), 8.02-7.95 (m, 1H), 7.88-7.78 (m, 1H), 7.64-7.14 (m, 8H), 6.58-6.45 (m, 2H), 4.18-4.07 (m, 3H), 3.43 (s, 3H), 3.12-3.04 (m, 2H), 2.95-2.86 (m, 1H), 2.80-2.68 (m, 1H), 1.78-1.69 (m, 2H), 1.54-1.45 (m, 2H), 1.14 (t, 3H).

35

Example 34

N-{4-[2-(acetylamino)-3-hydroxyphenoxy]butyl}-4-[(carboxycarbonyl)(2-carboxyphenyl)amino]-N-(methoxycarbonyl)-L-phenylalaninamide

Example 34A*N*-(2,6-dihydroxyphenyl)acetamide

A mixture of 2-nitroresorcinol (1.0 g, 6.45 mmol) and 10% Pd-C (100 mg) in methanol (15 mL) was stirred under an atmosphere of hydrogen at ambient temperature for 4 hours. The reaction mixture was filtered through celite and the filtrate concentrated under reduced pressure. A mixture of the residue, triethylamine (1.8 mL, 12.9 mmol) and acetyl chloride (1.38 mL, 19.35 mmol) in dichloromethane (15 mL) was stirred at ambient temperature for 1 hour, poured into 1N NaOH (20 mL) and methanol (20 mL). After 10 minutes, the mixture was concentrated under reduced pressure and taken up in ethyl acetate and 1N HCl (50 mL, 1:1). The layers were separated and the organic phase was washed with brine, dried (MgSO₄), filtered and concentrated to provide titled compound. MS (ESI (-)) m/e 166(M-H)⁺; ¹H NMR (300 MHz, DMSO-d₆) 9.31(s, 2H), 6.86 (t, 1H), 6.34 (d, 2H), 2.11(s, 3H).

Example 34B*N*-{4-[2-(acetylamino)-3-hydroxyphenoxy]butyl}-4--[(carboxycarbonyl)(2-carboxyphenyl)amino]-*N*-(methoxycarbonyl)-L-phenylalaninamide

The titled compound was prepared according to the procedure described in Example 30, substituting *N*-(2,6-dihydroxyphenyl)acetamide for 2,6-dihydroxy-*N*-methylbenzamide. MS (ESI(+)) m/e 651 (M+H)⁺; ¹H NMR (500 MHz, DMSO-d₆) 9.09 (bs, 1H), 9.00(s, 1H), 7.98-7.82 (m, 2H), 7.66-6.95 (m, 8H), 6.53-6.45 (m, 2H), 4.18-4.12 (m, 1H), 3.92-3.88 (m, 2H), 3.43 (s, 3H), 3.15-3.04 (m, 2H), 2.95-2.86 (m, 1H), 2.80-2.68 (m, 1H), 2.03 (s, 3H), 1.71-1.59 (m, 2H), 1.54-1.45 (m, 2H).

Example 354-[(carboxycarbonyl)(2-carboxyphenyl)amino]-*N*-(4-{2-[(dimethylamino)carbonyl]-3-hydroxyphenoxy}butyl)-*N*-(methoxycarbonyl)-L-phenylalaninamideExample 35A2,6-dimethoxy-*N,N*-dimethylbenzamide

A mixture of 2,6-dimethoxybenzoic acid (102 mg, 0.56 mmol), dimethylamine hydrochloride (91 mg, 1.12 mmol), 2-(1H-benzotriazole-1-yl)-1,1,3,3-tetramethyluronium tetrafluoroborate (234 mg, 0.73 mmol) and diisopropylethylamine (390 µL, 2.24 mmol) in DMF (1 mL) was stirred at ambient temperature overnight. The reaction mixture was taken up in ethyl acetate (50mL) and aqueous.NaHCO₃(50mL). The organic phase was washed with brine (2 x

50mL), dried (MgSO₄), filtered and concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was purified on silica gel eluting with ethyl acetate to provide titled compound (66 mg). MS (APCI(+)) m/e 210 (M+H)⁺.

5

Example 35B2,6-dihydroxy-*N,N*-dimethylbenzamide

To a mixture of 2,6-dimethoxy-*N,N*-dimethylbenzamide (64 mg, 0.3 mmol) dissolved in dichloromethane (2mL) was added 1M BBr₃ in dichloromethane (1mL, 1.0 mmol) under nitrogen atmosphere and stirred for 16 hours. The mixture was diluted with ethyl acetate and the mixture was washed with water (2 x 30 mL) and brine (2 x 30 mL). The organic phase was dried (MgSO₄), filtered and concentrated under reduced pressure to provide titled compound (20mg). MS (ESI(-)) m/e 180 (M-H)⁺; ¹H NMR (300 MHz, DMSO-d₆) 9.36 (s, 2H), 6.92 (t, 1H), 6.30 (d, 2H), 2.97-2.73 (m, 6H).

15

Example 35C4-[(carboxycarbonyl)(2-carboxyphenyl)amino]-*N*-(4-{2-[(dimethylamino)carbonyl]-3-hydroxyphenoxy}butyl)-*N*-(methoxycarbonyl)-L-phenylalaninamide

The titled compound was prepared according to the procedure described in Example 30, substituting 2,6-dihydroxy-*N,N*-dimethylbenzamide for 2,6-dihydroxy-*N*-methylbenzamide. MS (ESI(+)) m/e 663 (M-H)⁺; ¹H NMR (500 MHz, DMSO-d₆) 9.52 (s, 1H), 7.96-7.04 (m, 11H), 6.47-6.44 (m, 2H), 4.18-4.11 (m, 1H), 3.92-3.85 (m, 2H), 3.44 (s, 3H), 3.12-3.01 (m, 2H), 2.95-2.86 (m, 1H), 2.91 (s, 3H), 2.78-2.68 (m, 1H), 2.71 (s, 1H), 1.62-1.54 (m, 2H), 1.50-1.43 (m, 2H).

25

Example 36methyl 2-(4-{[*N*-(*tert*-butoxycarbonyl)-4-[(2-carboxybutyl)(carboxycarbonyl)amino]phenylalanyl]amino}butoxy)-6-hydroxybenzoate

30

Example 36Aethyl 2-formylbutanoate

To a solution of ethyl butyrate (5.81 g, 50 mmol) in THF (35 mL) at -78 °C was added lithium diisopropylamide (36.7 mL, 1.5 M in cyclohexane). The mixture was stirred for 0.5 hour then ethyl formate (11.10 g, 149 mmol) in THF (15 mL) was added to the mixture. The mixture was allowed to come to ambient temperature and stirred for 1 hour. The mixture was diluted with diethyl ether (50 mL) and washed with 5% HCl (2 x 50 mL),

saturated NaHCO_3 (2 x 50 mL) and water (2 x 50 mL). The organic layer was dried (Na_2SO_4), filtered and concentrated under reduced pressure to provide an oil. The oil was chromatographed on silica gel (hexane/ ethyl acetate 10:1) to provide the titled compound (7.32 g, 30 %).

5

Example 36B

methyl 2-{4-[(tert-butoxycarbonyl)amino]butoxy}-6-hydroxybenzoate

To a mixture of tert-butyl 4-hydroxybutylcarbamate (400 mg, 2.1 mmol), 2,6-dihydroxybenzoate (463 mg, 2.7 mmol), and triphenylphosphine (777 mg, 3.0 mmol) under positive nitrogen atmosphere in THF (anhydrous) was added dropwise diethyl azodicarboxylate (433 μL , 2.7 mmol). The mixture was stirred for 16 hour, solvents removed under reduced pressure and the residue was purified on a silica gel chromatography eluting with 15-30% ethyl acetate in hexane to give the titled compound (410 mg, 57%) as a colorless oil.

15

Example 36C

methyl 2-(4-aminobutoxy)-6-hydroxybenzoate

Compound from Example 36B (410 mg, 1.2 mmol) was treated with trifluoroacetic acid/dichloromethane (6 mL, 1:1/v:v) at ambient temperature for 3 hours, concentrated under reduced pressure and evaporated with acetonitrile (2x) to provide the titled compound as its trifluoroacetic acid salt (450 mg).

20

25

Example 36D

methyl 2-(4-{[N-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)-4-nitro-L-phenylalanyl]amino}butoxy)-6-hydroxybenzoate

To the solution of 2-tert-butoxycarbonylamino-3-(4-nitro-phenyl)-propionic acid (1.48 g, 4.8 mmol) and Example 36C (1.31 g, 4.7 mmol) in DMF (5 mL) was added triethylamine (4.2 g, 9.6 mmol) and 2-(1H-benzotriazole-1-yl)-1,1,3,3-tetramethyluronium tetrafluoroborate (1.95 g, 6 mmol). The mixture was stirred for 1 hour, diluted with water (30 mL) and extracted with ethyl acetate (3 x 20 mL). The organic layer was dried (Na_2SO_4), filtered and concentrated under reduced pressure to an oil. The oil was chromatographed on silica gel (hexane/ ethyl acetate 1:4) to provide the title compound (2.0 g, 69 %).

30
35

Example 36Emethyl 2-(4-{[4-amino-N-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)-L-phenylalanyl]amino}butoxy)-6-hydroxybenzoate

To a mixture of methyl 2-(4-{[N-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)-4-nitro-L-phenylalanyl]amino}butoxy)-6-hydroxybenzoate (1.7 g, 3.2 mmol) and ammonium chloride (0.017 g, 0.32 mmol) in ethyl alcohol/ H₂O (54 mL/14 mL) was added iron powder (1.8 g, 32 mmol). The mixture was heated to reflux for 16 hours, cooled to room temperature, filtered through celite, and the filtrate extracted with ethyl acetate (2 x 20 mL). The combined organic layers were dried (Na₂SO₄), filtered and concentrated under reduced pressure to give the titled compound as an oil (1.5 g, 93%).

Example 36Fmethyl 2-{4-[(N-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)-4-{[2-(ethoxycarbonyl)butyl]amino}-L-phenylalanyl]amino]butoxy}-6-hydroxybenzoate

A mixture of methyl 2-(4-{[4-amino-N-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)-L-phenylalanyl]amino}butoxy)-6-hydroxybenzoate (200 mg, 0.4 mmol) and ethyl 2-formylbutanoate (Example 36A) (115 mg, 0.8 mmol) in ethyl alcohol (1 mL) was adjust to the pH between 4 ~ 5 through the addition of sodium acetate and acetic acid. Sodium cyanoborohydride (74 mg, 1.2 mmol) was added in portions and the mixture stirred for two hours. The mixture was concentrated under reduced pressure, partitioned between ethyl acetate (10 mL) and water (40mL) and extracted with ethyl acetate (2 x 10 mL). The combined organic layers were dried (Na₂SO₄), filtered and concentrated under reduced pressure to provide the titled compound as an oil.

Example 36Gmethyl 2-{4-[(N-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)-4-{[2-(ethoxycarbonyl)butyl][ethoxy(oxo)acetyl]amino}-L-phenylalanyl]amino]butoxy}-6-hydroxybenzoate

To an ice cold solution of methyl 2-(4-{[N-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)-4-{[2-(ethoxycarbonyl)butyl]amino}-L-phenylalanyl]amino]butoxy}-6-hydroxybenzoate (100 mg, 0.17 mmol) in dichloromethane was added diisopropylethylamine (54 mg, 0.41 mmol) and ethyl oxalyl chloride (50 mg, 0.37 mmol). The mixture was allowed to come to room temperature and washed with saturated NH₄Cl (2x 25 mL). The aqueous solution was extracted with dichloromethane (2 x 10 mL). The combined organic layers were dried

(Na₂SO₄), filtered and concentrated under reduced pressure to give the titled compound as an oil.

5

Example 36H

methyl 2-(4-{{N-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)-4-[(2-carboxybutyl)(carboxycarbonyl)amino]phenylalanyl}amino}butoxy)-6-hydroxybenzoate

To a solution of methyl 2-{4-[(N-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)-4-[(2-ethoxycarbonyl)butyl][ethoxy(oxo)acetyl]amino}-L-phenylalanyl)amino]butoxy}-6-hydroxybenzoate (50 mg, 0.07 mmol) in ethyl alcohol (0.5 mL) was added 2M NaOH (1.5 mL). The mixture was stirred for 2 hours, concentrated under reduced pressure and purified by reverse phase HPLC elution with 0% to 70% acetonitrile/ 0.1% aqueous trifluoroacetic acid to provide the titled compound (20 mg, 40%). ¹H NMR (500 MHz, MeOH) δ 0.88 (t, 3H, J = 7.3 Hz), 1.40 (s, 9H), 1.57 (m, 2H), 1.65 (m, 2H), 1.78 (m, 2H), 2.43 (m, 1H), 2.95 (m, 2H), 3.21 (t, 2H, J = 6.4 Hz), 3.80, (m, 1H), 3.88 (s, 3H), 4.00 (q, 2H, J = 7.3 Hz), 4.06 (m, 1H), 4.22 (t, 1H, J = 6.2 Hz), 6.49 (m, 2H), 7.26 (m, 5H). MS (ESI) m/z 674 [M+H]⁺, 696 [M+Na]⁺.

20

Example 37

methyl 2-(4-{{N-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)-4-[(carboxycarbonyl)(2-carboxy-3-phenylpropyl)amino]phenylalanyl}amino}butoxy)-6-hydroxybenzoate

The titled compound was prepared according to the procedures described in Example 36, substituting 3-phenyl-propionic acid ethyl ester for ethyl butyrate used in Example 36A. ¹H NMR (500 MHz, MeOH) δ 1.40 (s, 9H), 1.64 (m, 2H), 1.73 (m, 2H), 2.83 (m, 4H), 2.95 (m, 1H), 3.19 (m, 2H), 3.80, (m, 1H), 3.87 (s, 3H), 3.96 (4, 2H), 4.00 (m, 2H), 4.22 (m, 1H), 4.49 (m, 2H), 6.48 (m, 2H), 7.21 (m, 10H). MS (ESI) m/z 736 [M+H]⁺, 758 [M+Na]⁺.

30

Example 38

methyl 2-(4-{{N-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)-4-[(carboxycarbonyl)(2-carboxy-2-phenylethyl)amino]phenylalanyl}amino}butoxy)-6-hydroxybenzoate

The titled compound was prepared according to the procedure described in Example 36, substituting phenyl-acetic acid methyl ester for ethyl butyrate used in Example 36A. ¹H NMR (500 MHz, MeOH) δ 1.40 (s, 9H), 1.66 (m, 2H), 1.75 (m, 2H), 2.89 (m, 2H), 3.21 (t, 2H, J = 6.5 Hz), 3.88 (s, 3H), 4.00 (m, 2H), 4.18 (m, 2H), 4.34 (t, 1H), 6.48 (m, 2H), 6.96 (t,

2H, J = 8.4 Hz), 7.05 (t, 2H, J = 8.4 Hz), 7.20 (m, 6H); MS (ESI) m/z 722 [M+H]⁺, 744 [M+Na]⁺.

5

Example 39

methyl 2-(4-([N-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)-4-((carboxycarbonyl)(2-carboxy-4-methoxybutyl)amino]phenylalanyl]amino)butoxy)-6-hydroxybenzoate

The titled compound was prepared according to the procedure described in Example 36, substituting 4-methoxy-butyric acid methyl ester for ethyl butyrate used in Example 36A.

10

¹H NMR (500 MHz, MeOH) δ 1.41 (s, 9H), 1.75 (m, 2H), 1.82 (m, 2H), 2.50 (m, 1H), 2.90 (m, 1H), 3.20 (m, 1H), 3.21 (s, 3H), 3.79 (m, 1H), 3.88 (s, 3H), 4.05 (m, 3H), 6.48 (m, 2H), 7.24 (m, 5H). MS (ESI) m/z 704 [M+H]⁺, 726 [M+Na]⁺.

15

Example 40

methyl 2-(4-([N-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)-4-((carboxycarbonyl)(2-carboxy-2-(4-hydroxyphenyl)ethyl]amino]phenylalanyl]amino)butoxy)-6-hydroxybenzoate

20

Example 40A

methyl (4-([tert-butyl(dimethyl)silyl]oxy)phenyl)acetate

A solution of (4-hydroxy-phenyl)-acetic acid methyl ester (2.5 g, 15 mmol), imidazole (2.24 g, 32.9 mmol) and tert-butyl dimethylsilylchloride (2.94 mg, 19.5 mmol) in DMF (5 mL) was stirred overnight. The mixture was diluted with diethyl ether (20 mL) and washed with 5% HCl (3 x 30 mL). The aqueous layer was back extracted with diethyl ether (2 x 20 mL) and the combined organic layers dried (Na₂SO₄), filtered and concentrated under reduced pressure to an oil (4 g, 98%).

25

30

Example 40B

methyl 2-(4-([tert-butyl(dimethyl)silyl]oxy)phenyl)-3-oxopropanoate

The titled compound was prepared according to the procedure described in Example 36A, substituting [4-(tert-Butyl-dimethyl-silanyloxy)-phenyl]-acetic acid methyl ester for ethyl butyrate used in Example 36A.

35

Example 40C

methyl 2-{4-[(N-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)-4-{[2-(4-{[tert-butyl(dimethyl)silyl]oxy}phenyl)-3-methoxy-3-oxopropyl][ethoxy(oxo)acetyl]amino}-L-phenylalanyl)amino]butoxy}-6-hydroxybenzoate

The titled compound was prepared according to the procedure described in Example 36 F-G, substituting methyl 2-(4-{[tert-butyl(dimethyl)silyl]oxy}phenyl)-3-oxopropanoate for the ethyl 2-formylbutanoate used in Example 36F.

Example 40D

methyl 2-{4-[(N-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)-4-{[ethoxy(oxo)acetyl][2-(4-hydroxyphenyl)-3-methoxy-3-oxopropyl]amino}-L-phenylalanyl)amino]butoxy}-6-hydroxybenzoate

To an ice cold solution of methyl 2-{4-[(N-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)-4-{[2-(4-{[tert-butyl(dimethyl)silyl]oxy}phenyl)-3-methoxy-3-oxopropyl][ethoxy(oxo)acetyl]amino}-L-phenylalanyl)amino]butoxy}-6-hydroxybenzoate (130 mg, 0.11 mmol) in THF (1 mL) was added tetra-butyl ammonium fluoride (0.5 mL, 1 M in THF). The mixture was allowed to come to ambient temperature and stirred for 3 hours. The organic solution was diluted with ethyl acetate, washed with 5% HCl, saturated NaHCO₃, dried (Na₂SO₄), filtered and concentrated under reduced pressure to provide the titled compound (84 mg, 75%)

Example 40E

methyl 2-(4-{[N-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)-4-{(carboxycarbonyl)[2-carboxy-2-(4-hydroxyphenyl)ethyl]amino}phenylalanyl]amino}butoxy)-6-hydroxybenzoate

A solution containing methyl 2-{4-[(N-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)-4-{[ethoxy(oxo)acetyl][2-(4-hydroxyphenyl)-3-methoxy-3-oxopropyl]amino}-L-phenylalanyl)amino]butoxy}-6-hydroxybenzoate (50 mg, 0.07 mmol) and 2M NaOH (1.5 mL) in ethanol (0.5 mL) was stirred for 2 hours. The mixture was concentrated under reduced pressure, purified by reverse phase HPLC elution with 0% to 70% acetonitrile/ 0.1% aqueous trifluoroacetic acid to provide the title compound (20 mg, 40%). ¹H NMR (500 MHz, MeOH) δ 1.41 (s, 9H), 1.66 (m, 2H), 1.75 (m, 2H), 2.89 (m, 2H), 3.20 (t, 2H, J = 6.8 Hz), 3.73 (m, 1H), 3.88 (s, 3H), 4.00 (m, 2H), 4.18 (m, 2H), 4.26 (m, 1H), 6.47 (m, 2H), 6.63 (m, 2H), 6.98 (m, 2H), 7.08 (m, 4H), 7.24 (t, 1H, J = 8.2 Hz). MS (ESI) m/z 738 [M+H]⁺, 760 [M+Na]⁺.

Example 41

methyl 2-(4-{{N-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)-4-{{(carboxycarbonyl)[2-carboxy-3-(4-hydroxy-3-methoxyphenyl)propyl]amino}phenylalanyl]amino}butoxy)-6-hydroxybenzoate

5

Example 41A

ethyl (3-{{tert-butyl(dimethyl)silyl}oxy}-4-methoxyphenyl)acetate

A mixture of ethyl (3-hydroxy-4-methoxyphenyl)acetate (1.5 g, 6.7 mmol), imidazole (0.95 g, 14.0 mmol) and tert-butyldimethylsilyl chloride (1.21 g, 8.02 mmol) in DMF (3 mL) was stirred for 16 hours. The mixture was partitioned with diethyl ether (10 mL) and 5% HCl (30 mL), the layers separated and the aqueous layer was extracted with diethyl ether (2 x 25 mL). The combined organic layers were dried (Na₂SO₄), filtered and concentrated under reduced pressure provide the titled compound as an oil (2.2 g, 97%).

15

Example 41B

ethyl 2-(3-{{tert-butyl(dimethyl)silyl}oxy}-4-methoxyphenyl)-3-oxopropanoate

The titled compound was prepared according to the procedure described in Example 36A, substituting 3-[4-(tert-Butyl-dimethyl-silanyloxy)-3-methoxy-phenyl]-propionic acid ethyl ester for ethyl butyrate used in Example 36A.

20

Example 41C

methyl 2-{4-[(N-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)-4-{{2-(3-{{tert-butyl(dimethyl)silyl}oxy}-4-methoxyphenyl)-3-ethoxy-3-oxopropyl][ethoxy(oxo)acetyl]amino}-L-phenylalanyl]amino}butoxy}-6-hydroxybenzoate

25

The titled compound was prepared according to the procedure described in Example 36 F-G, substituting ethyl 2-(3-{{tert-butyl(dimethyl)silyl}oxy}-4-methoxyphenyl)-3-oxopropanoate for ethyl 2-formylbutanoate.

30

Example 41D

methyl 2-{4-[(N-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)-4-{{3-ethoxy-2-(3-hydroxy-4-methoxyphenyl)-3-oxopropyl][ethoxy(oxo)acetyl]amino}-L-phenylalanyl]amino}butoxy}-6-hydroxybenzoate

35

The titled compound was prepared according to the procedure described in Example 40D, substituting methyl 2-{4-[(N-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)-4-{{2-(3-{{tert-butyl(dimethyl)silyl}oxy}-4-methoxyphenyl)-3-ethoxy-3-oxopropyl][ethoxy(oxo)acetyl]amino}-L-phenylalanyl]amino}butoxy}-6-hydroxybenzoate

for methyl 2-{4-[(*N*-(*tert*-butoxycarbonyl)-4-[[2-(4-[[*tert*-butyl(dimethyl)silyl]oxy)phenyl]-3-methoxy-3-oxopropyl][ethoxy(oxo)acetyl]amino}-L-phenylalanyl)amino]butoxy}-6-hydroxybenzoate.

5

Example 41E

methyl 2-(4-[[*N*-(*tert*-butoxycarbonyl)-4-[(carboxycarbonyl)(2-carboxy-3-(4-hydroxy-3-methoxyphenyl)propyl]amino]phenylalanyl]amino}butoxy)-6-hydroxybenzoate

To a solution of methyl 2-{4-[(*N*-(*tert*-butoxycarbonyl)-4-[[3-ethoxy-2-(3-hydroxy-4-methoxyphenyl)-3-oxopropyl][ethoxy(oxo)acetyl]amino}-L-phenylalanyl)amino]butoxy}-6-hydroxybenzoate (50mg, 0.06 mmol) in ethanol (0.5 mL) was added 2M NaOH (1.5 mL) and let stirred for 2 hours. The mixture was concentrated under reduced pressure and purified by reverse phase HPLC elution with 0% to 70% acetonitrile/ 0.1% aqueous trifluoroacetic acid to provide the titled compound (20 mg, 40%). ¹H NMR (500 MHz, MeOH) δ 1.39 (s, 9H), 1.64 (m, 2H), 1.71 (m, 2H), 2.81 (m, 5H), 3.20 (m, 2H), 3.79 (s, 3H), 3.87 (m, 1H), 3.88 (s, 3H), 3.98 (m, 2H), 4.04 (m, 1H), 4.22 (t, 1H, J = 6.2 Hz), 6.47 (m, 2H), 6.63 (m, 2H), 6.75 (s, 1H), 7.23(m, 5H). MS (ESI) m/z 782 [M+H]⁺, 804 [M+Na]⁺.

20

Example 42

methyl 2-(4-[[*N*-(*tert*-butoxycarbonyl)-4-[(carboxycarbonyl)(2-carboxypentyl)amino]-L-phenylalanyl]amino}butoxy)-6-hydroxybenzoate

The titled compound was prepared according to the procedures described in Example 36, substituting pentanoic acid ethyl ester for ethyl butyrate used in Example 36A. ¹H NMR (500 MHz, MeOH) δ 1.03 (t, 3H, J = 7.3 Hz), 1.38 (s, 9H), 1.72 (m, 6H), 2.43 (m, 2H), 2.89 (m, 1H), 3.10 (m, 1H), 3.22 (t, 2H, J = 7.0 Hz), 3.73 (m, 1H), 3.88 (s, 3H), 4.00 (t, 1H, J = 5.8 Hz), 4.22 (m, 1H), 6.47 (m, 2H), 7.24(m, 5H). MS (ESI) m/z 688 [M+H]⁺, 710 [M+Na]⁺.

30

Example 43

methyl 2-(4-[[*N*-(*tert*-butoxycarbonyl)-4-[(carboxycarbonyl)[1-(carboxymethyl)propyl]amino]-L-phenylalanyl]amino}butoxy)-6-hydroxybenzoate

35

Example 43A

methyl 2-(4-[[*N*-(*tert*-butoxycarbonyl)-4-[(3-ethoxy-1-ethyl-3-oxopropyl)amino]-L-phenylalanyl]amino)butoxy]-6-hydroxybenzoate

A mixture of methyl 2-(4-{{4-amino-*N*-(*tert*-butoxycarbonyl)-L-phenylalanyl}amino}butoxy)-6-hydroxybenzoate (200 mg, 0.4 mmol) and ethyl 3-oxopentanoate (230 mg, 1.6 mmol) dissolved in ethyl alcohol (1 mL) was adjusted to the pH between 4 ~ 5 through the addition of sodium acetate and acetic acid. Sodium cyanoborohydride (74 mg, 1.2 mmol) was added in portions and the mixture stirred for two hours. The reaction was heated to reflux for two hours, concentrated under reduced pressure, diluted with ethyl acetate (10 mL) and washed with water (2 x 20 mL). The combined aqueous layers were extracted with ethyl acetate (2 x 10 mL). The combined organic layers were dried (Na₂SO₄), filtered, concentrated under reduced pressure and purified by reverse phase HPLC elution with 0% to 70% acetonitrile/ 0.1% aqueous trifluoroacetic acid to provide the titled compound (100 mg, 42%).

Example 43B

methyl 2-{4-[(*N*-(*tert*-butoxycarbonyl)-4-{(3-ethoxy-1-ethyl-3-oxopropyl)[ethoxy(oxo)acetyl]amino}-L-phenylalanyl)amino]butoxy}-6-hydroxybenzoate

To an ice cold solution of methyl 2-[4-({*N*-(*tert*-butoxycarbonyl)-4-{(3-ethoxy-1-ethyl-3-oxopropyl)amino}-L-phenylalanyl)amino]butoxy]-6-hydroxybenzoate (100 mg, 0.17 mmol) in dichloromethane was added diisopropylethylamine (54 mg, 0.41 mmol) and ethyl oxalyl chloride (50 mg, 0.37 mmol). The mixture was allowed to come to room temperature and washed with aqueous NH₄Cl. The aqueous solution was extracted with dichloromethane (2 x 10 mL). The combined organic layers were dried (Na₂SO₄), filtered and concentrated under reduced pressure to provide the title compound.

25

Example 43C

methyl 2-(4-{{*N*-(*tert*-butoxycarbonyl)-4-{(carboxycarbonyl)[1-(carboxymethyl)propyl]amino}-L-phenylalanyl}amino}butoxy)-6-hydroxybenzoate

A solution of methyl 2-{4-[(*N*-(*tert*-butoxycarbonyl)-4-{(3-ethoxy-1-ethyl-3-oxopropyl)[ethoxy(oxo)acetyl]amino}-L-phenylalanyl)amino]butoxy}-6-hydroxybenzoate (50 mg, 0.07 mmol) and 2M NaOH (1.5 mL) in ethanol (0.5 mL) was stirred for 2 hours, concentrated under reduced pressure and purified by reverse phase HPLC elution with 0% to 70% acetonitrile/ 0.1% aqueous trifluoroacetic acid to provide the title compound (20 mg, 40%). ¹H NMR (500 MHz, MeOH) δ 0.88 (t, 3H, J = 7.3 Hz), 1.38 (s, 9H), 1.65 (m, 2H), 1.78 (m, 2H), 2.60 (m, 1H), 2.88 (m, 2H), 3.05 (m, 2H), 3.22 (t, 2H, J = 6.4 Hz), 3.88 (s, 3H), 3.90 (m, 1H), 4.00 (m, 2H), 4.06 (m, 1H), 4.22 (t, 1H, J = 6.2 Hz), 6.49 (m, 2H), 7.26 (m, 5H). MS (ESI) m/z 674 [M+H]⁺, 696 [M+Na]⁺.

Example 44

methyl 2-(4-{[N-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)-4-[(carboxycarbonyl)(2-carboxypropyl)amino]-L-phenylalanyl]amino}butoxy)-6-hydroxybenzoate

The title compound was prepared according to the procedures described in Example 36, by substituting the ethyl 2-methyl-3-oxopropanoate for the ethyl butyrate used in Example 36A. ¹H NMR (500 MHz, MeOH) δ 1.15 (t, 3H, J = 7.2 Hz), 1.39 (s, 9H), 1.66 (m, 2H), 1.65 (m, 2H), 1.78 (m, 2H), 2.58 (m, 1H), 2.88 (m, 1H), 2.96 (m, 1H), 3.21 (t, 2H, J = 6.6 Hz), 3.81 (m, 1H), 3.88 (s, 3H), 4.00 (t and m, 3H, J = 5.9 Hz), 4.22 (br s, 1H), 6.47 (d, 1H, J = 8.4 Hz), 6.51 (d, 1H, J = 8.1 Hz), 7.18-7.32 (m, 6H). MS (ESI) m/z (ESI) 660 [M+H]⁺, 682 [M+Na]⁺, 658 [M-H]⁻.

Example 45

methyl 2-(4-{[4-(carboxycarbonyl)amino-N-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)phenylalanyl]amino}butoxy)-6-hydroxybenzoate

Example 45A

4-amino-N-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)-L-phenylalanine

A mixture of BOC-Phe (4-NO₂)-OH (3.1 g, 10.0 mmol) and 10% Pd-C (310 mg) in ethanol (100 mL) was stirred under an atmosphere of hydrogen at ambient temperature for 2 hours to provide the titled compound. ¹H NMR (300 MHz, DMSO-d₆) δ 6.89-6.82 (m, 3H), 6.46 (d, 2H), 5.2-4.6 (bs, 2H), 3.47-3.41 (m, 1H), 2.84-2.63 (m, 2H), 1.34 (s, 9H). MS (ESI(-)) m/e 279 (M-H)⁺.

Example 45B

allyl 4-amino-N-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)-L-phenylalaninate

To a mixture of Example 45A (1.4 g, 5.0 mmol) and Cs₂CO₃ (1.63 g, 5.0 mmol) in N,N-dimethylformamide (20 mL) was added allyl bromide (433 μl, 5.0 mmol) at room temperature then stirred at room temperature for 5 hours. The mixture was partitioned between ethyl acetate and water (100mL, 1:1), the aqueous layer was extracted with ethyl acetate (50 mL). The combined organic layers were washed with saturated NaHCO₃, brine (2 x 50 mL), dried (MgSO₄), filtered and concentrated. The concentrate was purified on silica

gel eluting with ethyl acetate / hexane (1:1) to provide titled compound (970 mg). ¹H NMR (300 MHz, DMSO-d₆) δ 7.17 (d, 1H), 6.87 (d, 2H), 6.46 (d, 2H), 5.92-5.77 (m, 1H), 5.33-5.16 (m, 2H), 4.88 (s, 2H), 4.57-4.52 (m, 2H), 4.11-4.01 (m, 1H), 2.84-2.63 (m, 2H), 1.34 (s, 9H). MS (ESI(+)) m/e 321(M+H)⁺.

5

Example 45C

allyl 4-[[[(benzyloxy)(oxo)acetyl]amino]-N-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)-L-phenylalaninate

To a mixture of Example 45B (1.02 g, 3.18 mmol) and diisopropylethylamine (1.11 mL, 6.36 mmol) in dichloromethane (10 mL) was added benzyl oxalyl chloride (600 μL, 3.82 mmol) dropwise at room temperature then stirred at room temperature for 10 minutes. The mixture was partitioned between ethyl acetate and aqueous NaHCO₃ (75 mL, 1:1). The organic layer was washed with brine (50 mL), dried (MgSO₄), filtered and concentrated to provide titled compound (1.49 g) as pale brown oil.

15

Example 45D

4-[[[(benzyloxy)(oxo)acetyl]amino]-N-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)-L-phenylalanine

A mixture of Example 45C (1.47 g, 3.05 mmol), Pd(Ph₃P)₄ (106 mg, 0.09 mmol) and morpholine (318 μL, 3.66 mmol) in dichloromethane (15 mL) was stirred under N₂ atmosphere for 2 hours, partitioned between ethyl acetate and water (75 mL, 1:1). The organic phase was washed with 1N HCl (1 x 25 mL), brine (1 x 25mL), dried (MgSO₄), filtered and concentrated under reduced pressure to provide the titled compound as yellow solid. ¹H NMR (300 MHz, DMSO-d₆) δ 12.57 (bs, 1H), 10.79 (s, 1H), 7.62 (d, 2H), 7.50-7.35 (m, 5H), 7.22 (d, 2H), 7.08 (d, 1H), 5.31 (s, 1H), 4.11-3.96 (m, 1H), 3.62-3.46 (m, 1H), 3.03-2.70 (m, 2H), 1.32 (s, 9H). MS (ESI(-)) m/e 441 (M-H)⁺.

25

Example 45E

methyl 2-[4-[(tert-butoxycarbonyl)amino]butoxy]-6-hydroxybenzoate

To a round bottom flask was charged with *tert*-butyl 4-hydroxybutylcarbamate (400 mg, 2.1 mmol), 463 mg of methyl 2,6-dihydroxybenzoate (463 mg, 2.7 mmol), and triphenylphosphine (777 mg, 3.0 mmol). The flask was vacuumed and back flushed with nitrogen (3x), capped with a rubber septum, and kept under positive nitrogen atmosphere. THF (anhydrous) (25 mL) was then added, followed by dropwise addition of diethyl azodicarboxylate (433 μL, 2.7 mmol). Solvent were removed under reduced pressure, and

35

the residue purified on a silica gel chromatography eluting with 15-30% ethyl acetate in hexane to give the titled compound (410 mg, 57%) as a colorless oil.

5

Example 45Fmethyl 2-(4-aminobutoxy)-6-hydroxybenzoate

Methyl 2-{4-[(*tert*-butoxycarbonyl)amino]butoxy}-6-hydroxybenzoate (410 mg, 1.2 mmol) was treated with trifluoroacetic acid/dichloromethane (6 mL, 1:1/v:v) at ambient temperature for 3 hours, concentrated under reduced pressure and evaporated with acetonitrile (2 x 50 mL) to provide the titled compound as its trifluoroacetic acid salt (450 mg).

15

Example 45Gmethyl 2-(4-{[4-{{(benzyloxy)(oxo)acetyl}amino}-*N*-(*tert*-butoxycarbonyl)-L-phenylalanyl]amino}butoxy)-6-hydroxybenzoate

The mixture of 4-{{(benzyloxy)(oxo)acetyl}amino}-*N*-(*tert*-butoxycarbonyl)-L-phenylalanine (133 mg, 0.3 mmol), methyl 2-(4-aminobutoxy)-6-hydroxybenzoate (120 mg, 0.34 mmol), 2-(1H-benzotriazole-1-yl)-1,1,3,3-tetramethyluronium tetrafluoroborate (96 mg, 0.3 mmol) and diisopropylethylamine (174 μ L, 1.0 mmol) in N,N-dimethylformamide (1 mL) was stirred at ambient temperature overnight, diluted with ethyl acetate (50 mL) and washed with aqueous NaHCO₃ (1 x 30 mL), brine (3 x 30 mL), dried (MgSO₄), filtered and concentrate under reduced pressure. The residue was purified by prep HPLC to provide of titled compound.

25

Example 45Hmethyl 2-(4-{[4-(carboxycarbonyl)amino]-*N*-(*tert*-butoxycarbonyl)phenylalanyl]amino}butoxy)-6-hydroxybenzoate

To a stirred solution of methyl 2-(4-{[4-{{(benzyloxy)(oxo)acetyl}amino}-*N*-(*tert*-butoxycarbonyl)-L-phenylalanyl]amino}butoxy)-6-hydroxybenzoate in methanol (2 mL) and THF (2 mL) was added 1N NaOH (0.6 mL, 0.6 mmol). The resulting mixture was stirred at ambient temperature for 2 hours, the mixture was acidified to a pH = 3 with 1N HCl and purified on a Gilson prep HPLC to provide the titled compound. ¹H NMR (300 MHz, DMSO-d₆) 10.62 (s, 1H), 9.92 (s, 1H), 7.90-7.82 (m, 1H), 7.64 (d, 2H), 7.32-7.12 (m, 4H), 6.86-6.82 (m, 1H), 6.50-6.44 (m, 2H), 4.03-4.02 (m, 1H), 3.93-3.87 (m, 2H), 3.72 (s, 3H),

35

3.13-3.00 (m, 2H), 2.92-2.66 (m, 2H), 1.62-1.42 (m, 4H), 1.31 (s, 9H). MS (ESI+) m/e 574 (M+H)⁺.

5

Example 46

benzyl 2-(4-{[4-(carboxycarbonyl)amino-*N*-(*tert*-
butoxycarbonyl)phenylalanyl]amino}butoxy)-6-hydroxybenzoate

The titled compound was prepared according to the procedures described in Example 45E-H, substituting benzyl 2,6-dihydroxybenzoate for methyl 2,6-dihydroxybenzoate. ¹H
10 NMR (300 MHz, DMSO-d₆) 10.63 (s, 1H), 9.97 (s, 1H), 7.90-7.82 (m, 1H), 7.64 (d, 2H),
7.44-7.12 (m, 8H), 6.86-6.82(m, 1H), 6.50-6.44 (m, 2H), 5.26 (s, 2H), 4.14-4.03 (m, 1H),
3.92-3.85 (m, 2H), 3.13-2.95 (m, 2H), 2.92-2.66 (m, 2H), 1.58-1.35 (m, 4H), 1.30 (s, 9H).
MS (ESI+) m/e 650 (M+H)⁺.

15

Example 47

2-(4-{[4-(carboxycarbonyl)amino-*N*-(*tert*-butoxycarbonyl)-L-phenylalanyl]amino}butoxy)-6-
hydroxybenzoic acid

A mixture of Example 46 and 10% Pd-C in methanol was stirred under an atmosphere
20 of hydrogen at ambient temperature overnight to provide the titled compound. ¹H NMR (300
MHz, DMSO-d₆) 10.61 (s, 1H), 7.88-7.82 (m, 1H), 7.62 (d, 2H), 7.23-7.15 (m, 3H), 6.84-
6.78(m, 1H), 6.50-6.46 (m, 2H), 4.14-4.08 (m, 1H), 3.94-3.90 (m, 2H), 3.15-3.03 (m, 2H),
2.92-2.66 (m, 2H), 1.66-1.46 (m, 4H), 1.31 (s, 9H). MS (ESI+) m/e 560 (M+H)⁺.

25

Example 48

2-(4-{[4-{[(benzyloxy)(oxo)acetyl]amino}-*N*-(methoxycarbonyl)-L-phenylalanyl]amino}butoxy)-6-
hydroxybenzoic acid

30

Example 48A

allyl 4-{[(benzyloxy)(oxo)acetyl]amino}-*N*-(methoxycarbonyl)-L-phenylalaninate

Allyl 4-{[(benzyloxy)(oxo)acetyl]amino}-*N*-(*tert*-butoxycarbonyl)-L-phenylalaninate
(4.8 g, 10.0 mmol) was treated with trifluoroacetic acid/dichloromethane (6mL, 1:1 v/v) at
35 ambient temperature for 3 hours, concentrated under reduced pressure and evaporated with
acetonitrile (2 x 30 mL) to provide the amine as its trifluoroacetic acid salt. Triethylamine (4

mL) was added to the solution of above salt in dichloromethane, followed by addition of methylchloroformate (772 μ L, 10.0 mmol). The reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 10 minutes, was partitioned between ethyl acetate and saturated NaHCO_3 (75 mL, 1:1). The organic phase was washed with brine, dried (MgSO_4), filtered and concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was purified on silica gel with hexane/ethyl acetate to provide the titled compound (3.52 g) as colorless oil. ^1H NMR (300 MHz, DMSO-d_6) δ 10.80 (s, 1H), 7.68 (d, 1H), 7.63 (d, 2H), 7.49-7.36 (m, 5H), 7.23 (d, 2H), 5.93-5.79 (m, 1H), 5.32 (s, 2H), 5.31-5.17 (m, 2H), 4.59-4.54 (m, 2H), 4.28-4.18 (m, 1H), 3.48 (s, 3H), 3.06-2.68 (m, 2H). MS (ESI(-)) m/e 439 (M-H) $^+$.

Example 48B

4-[[[(benzyloxy)(oxo)acetyl]amino]-N-(methoxycarbonyl)-L-phenylalanine

A mixture of allyl 4-[[[(benzyloxy)(oxo)acetyl]amino]-N-(methoxycarbonyl)-L-phenylalaninate (2.65 g, 6.0 mmol), $\text{Pd}(\text{Ph}_3\text{P})_4$ (99 mg, 0.086 mmol) and morpholine (628 μ L, 7.2 mmol) in dichloromethane (20 mL) was stirred under N_2 atmosphere for 2 hours, partitioned between ethyl acetate and water (75 mL, 1:1). The organic phase was washed with 1N HCl (1 x 25 mL), brine (1 x 25 mL), dried (MgSO_4), filtered and concentrated under reduced pressure to provide the titled compound (2.5 g) as pale yellow solid.

Example 48C

2-(4-[[4-[(carboxycarbonyl)amino]-N-(methoxycarbonyl)-L-phenylalanyl]amino]butoxy)-6-hydroxybenzoic acid

The titled compound was prepared according to the procedures described in Example 45G-H, substituting 4-[[[(benzyloxy)(oxo)acetyl]amino]-N-(methoxycarbonyl)-L-phenylalanine for 4-[[[(benzyloxy)(oxo)acetyl]amino]-N-(tert-butoxycarbonyl)-L-phenylalanine from Example 45D. ^1H NMR (300 MHz, DMSO-d_6) δ 10.56 (s, 1H), 7.99-7.92 (m, 1H), 7.63 (d, 2H), 7.23-7.15 (m, 4H), 6.50-6.46 (m, 2H), 4.15-4.10 (m, 1H), 3.95-3.90 (m, 2H), 3.45 (s, 3H), 3.15-3.01 (m, 2H), 2.92-2.66 (m, 2H), 1.64-1.46 (m, 4H). MS (ESI+) m/e 518 (M+H) $^+$.

Example 49

methyl 2-(4-[[4-(carboxycarbonyl)amino]-amino-N-(methoxycarbonyl)-L-phenylalanyl]amino]butoxy)-6-hydroxybenzoate

The titled compound was prepared according to the procedures described in Example 45D-H, substituting 4-{{{benzyloxy}(oxo)acetyl}amino}-*N*-(methoxycarbonyl)-L-phenylalanine for 4-{{{benzyloxy}(oxo)acetyl}amino}-*N*-(*tert*-butoxycarbonyl)-L-phenylalanine. ¹H NMR (300 MHz, DMSO-*d*₆) δ 10.59 (s, 1H), 9.90 (s, 1H), 7.97-7.92 (m, 1H), 7.63 (d, 2H), 7.29-7.14 (m, 4H), 6.50-6.46 (m, 2H), 4.17-4.12 (m, 1H), 3.95-3.90 (m, 2H), 3.72 (s, 3H), 3.45 (s, 3H), 3.15-3.01 (m, 2H), 2.92-2.66 (m, 2H), 1.62-1.44 (m, 4H). MS (ESI+) *m/e* 532 (M+H)⁺.

10

Example 50

4-[(carboxycarbonyl)amino]-*N*-[4-(3-hydroxy-2-nitrophenoxy)butyl]-*N*-(methoxycarbonyl)-L-phenylalaninamide

15

The titled compound was prepared according to the procedures described in Example 45D-H, substituting 4-{{{benzyloxy}(oxo)acetyl}amino}-*N*-(methoxycarbonyl)-L-phenylalanine for 4-{{{benzyloxy}(oxo)acetyl}amino}-*N*-(*tert*-butoxycarbonyl)-L-phenylalanine and 2-nitrosocinol for methyl 2,6-dihydroxybenzoate. ¹H NMR (300 MHz, DMSO-*d*₆) δ 10.82 (s, 1H), 10.61 (s, 1H), 7.98-7.93 (m, 1H), 7.63 (d, 2H), 7.29-7.18 (m, 4H), 6.68-6.58 (m, 2H), 4.17-4.09 (m, 1H), 4.08-3.98 (m, 2H), 3.45 (s, 3H), 3.15-3.01 (m, 2H), 2.94-2.66 (m, 2H), 1.62-1.38 (m, 4H). MS (ESI+) *m/e* 519 (M+H)⁺.

20

Example 51

benzyl 2-(4-{[4-(carboxycarbonyl)amino]-*N*-(methoxycarbonyl)-L-phenylalanyl]amino}butoxy)-6-hydroxybenzoate

25

The titled compound was prepared according to the procedures described in Example 45D-H, substituting 4-{{{benzyloxy}(oxo)acetyl}amino}-*N*-(methoxycarbonyl)-L-phenylalanine for 4-{{{benzyloxy}(oxo)acetyl}amino}-*N*-(*tert*-butoxycarbonyl)-L-phenylalanine and benzyl 2,6-dihydroxybenzoate for methyl 2,6-dihydroxybenzoate. ¹H NMR (300 MHz, DMSO-*d*₆) δ 10.59 (s, 1H), 9.95 (s, 1H), 7.96-7.90 (m, 1H), 7.63 (d, 2H), 7.44-7.12 (m, 9H), 6.50-6.44 (m, 2H), 5.26 (s, 2H), 4.17-4.11 (m, 1H), 3.92-3.87 (m, 2H), 3.44 (s, 3H), 3.13-2.96 (m, 2H), 2.92-2.66 (m, 2H), 1.58-1.37 (m, 4H). MS (ESI+) *m/e* 608 (M+H)⁺.

30

35

Example 52

2-[(carboxycarbonyl)amino]-5-[3-(4-[3-hydroxy-2-(methoxycarbonyl)phenoxy]butyl)amino)-3-oxopropyl]benzoic acid

5

Example 52A

methyl 5-bromo-2-[[ethoxy(oxo)acetyl]amino]benzoate

To a stirred solution of methyl 2-amino-5-bromo-benzoate (1.4g, 6.1 mmol) in methylene chloride (15 mL) at 0 °C was added triethylamine (1.27 mL, 9.1 mmol), followed by ethyl oxalyl chloride (0.89 mL, 7.3 mmol). After 0.5 hour, the mixture was partitioned between 3N HCl (30 mL) and ethyl acetate (30 mL). The organic layer was washed with aqueous NaHCO₃, brine, dried (Na₂SO₄), filtered and concentrated under reduced pressure to provide the titled compound as a white fluffy powder (2.1g, 100%).

15

Example 52B

methyl 5-[(1E)-3-tert-butoxy-3-oxoprop-1-enyl]-2-[[ethoxy(oxo)acetyl]amino]benzoate

To a solution of methyl 5-bromo-2-[[ethoxy(oxo)acetyl]amino]benzoate (1.46 g, 4.8 mmol) in DMF (15 mL) was added Pd(OAc)₂ (32 mg, 0.14 mmol), (o-Tol)₃P (88 mg, 0.28 mmol), triethylamine (1.5 mL, 7.2 mmol), followed by the addition of t-butyl acrylate (1.55 mL, 7.2 mmol). The reaction mixture was heated to 100 °C for 1.5 hour. The mixture was allowed to come to ambient temperature and poured into water. The formed white precipitates was collected through filtration, washed with cold water, dried under reduced pressure to provide the titled compound as a white solid (1.2 g, 3.3 mol, 69%).

25

Example 52C

methyl 5-(3-tert-butoxy-3-oxopropyl)-2-[[ethoxy(oxo)acetyl]amino]benzoate

Methyl 5-[(1E)-3-tert-butoxy-3-oxoprop-1-enyl]-2-[[ethoxy(oxo)acetyl]amino]benzoate was stirred in a mixture of *i*-propanol/ethyl acetate (25 mL, 1:1, v/v) with 10% Pd/C (100 mg) under an atmosphere of hydrogen for 16 hours. The reaction mixture was filtered through celite, concentrated under reduced pressure to provide the titled compound as a white solid.

35

Example 52D

3-[4-[[ethoxy(oxo)acetyl]amino]-3-(methoxycarbonyl)phenyl]propanoic acid

Methyl 5-(3-*tert*-butoxy-3-oxopropyl)-2-{{ethoxy(oxo)acetyl}amino}benzoate was treated with a mixture of trifluoroacetic acid/dichloromethane (10 mL, 1:1, v/v) at room temperature for 2 hours. The solvents were removed under reduced pressure to provide the titled compound as a white solid.

5

Example 52E

methyl 2-{{ethoxy(oxo)acetyl}amino}-5-[3-({4-[3-hydroxy-2-(methoxycarbonyl)phenoxy]butyl}amino)-3-oxopropyl]benzoate

10

The titled compound was prepared according to the method described in Example 45G, substituting 3-[4-{{ethoxy(oxo)acetyl}amino}-3-(methoxycarbonyl)phenyl]propanoic acid for 4-{{(benzyloxy)(oxo)acetyl}amino}-*N*-(*tert*-butoxycarbonyl)-L-phenylalanine.

15

Example 52F

2-[(carboxycarbonyl)amino]-5-[3-({4-[3-hydroxy-2-(methoxycarbonyl)phenoxy]butyl}amino)-3-oxopropyl]benzoic acid

20

To a stirred solution of methyl 2-{{ethoxy(oxo)acetyl}amino}-5-[3-({4-[3-hydroxy-2-(methoxycarbonyl)phenoxy]butyl}amino)-3-oxopropyl]benzoate (90mg, 0.17 mmol) in methanol (2 mL) was added 1N NaOH (0.51mL, 0.51 mmol). The mixture was stirred at room temperature for 1.5 hour, the solvents removed under reduced pressure, the resulting mixture acidified to a pH of 3 with 3N HCl, and the resulting off-white solid collected by filtration. The solid was washed with cold water, dried under reduced pressure to provide the titled compound (80 mg, 94%). ¹H NMR (300 MHz, DMSO-*d*₆) δ 1.37-1.61 (m, 4H), 2.37 (t, 2H), 2.83 (t, 2H), 3.04 (q, 2H), 3.71 (s, 3H), 3.87 (t, 2H), 6.46 (dd, 1H), 7.15 (t, 1H), 7.50 (dd, 1H), 7.82 (t, 1H), 7.88 (d, 1H), 8.51 (d, 1H), 9.92 (s, 1H), 12.49 (s, 1H). MS (ESI+) *m/e* 503 (M+H)⁺.

25

30

Example 53

N-{4-[2-(acetylamino)-3-hydroxyphenoxy]butyl}-4-[(carboxycarbonyl)amino]-amino-*N*-(methoxycarbonyl)-L-phenylalaninamide

35

Example 53A

N-(2,6-dihydroxyphenyl)acetamide

A mixture of 2-nitroresorcinol (1.0 g, 6.45 mmol) and 10% Pd-C (100 mg) in methanol (15 mL) was stirred under an atmosphere of hydrogen at ambient temperature for 4 hours. The reaction mixture was filtered through celite and the filtrate concentrated under reduced pressure. A mixture of the residue, triethylamine (1.8 mL, 12.9 mmol) and acetyl chloride (1.38 mL, 19.35 mmol) in dichloromethane (15 mL) was stirred at ambient
5 temperature for 1 hour, poured into 1N NaOH (20 mL) and methanol (20 mL). After 10 minutes, the mixture was concentrated under reduced pressure and taken up in ethyl acetate and 1N HCl (50 mL, 1:1). The layers were separated and the organic phase was washed with brine, dried (MgSO₄), filtered and concentrated to provide titled compound. ¹H NMR (300
10 MHz, DMSO-d₆) 9.31(s, 2H), 6.86 (t, 1H), 6.34 (d, 2H), 2.11(s, 3H). MS (ESI (-)) m/e 166(M-H)⁺.

Example 53B

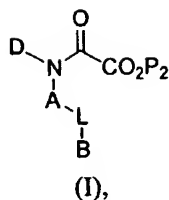
15 *N*-{4-[2-(acetylamino)-3-hydroxyphenoxy]butyl}-4-[(carboxycarbonyl)amino]-amino-*N*-(methoxycarbonyl)-L-phenylalaninamide

The titled compound was prepared according to the procedures described in Example 45D-H, substituting 4-{[(benzyloxy)(oxo)acetyl]amino}-*N*-(methoxycarbonyl)-L-phenylalanine for 4-{[(benzyloxy)(oxo)acetyl]amino}-*N*-(*tert*-butoxycarbonyl)-L-phenylalanine and *N*-(2,6-dihydroxy-phenyl)-acetamide for methyl 2,6-dihydroxybenzoate.
20 ¹H NMR (300 MHz, DMSO-d₆) δ 10.58 (s, 1H), 9.08 (s, 1H), 9.00 (s, 1H), 7.97-7.92 (m, 1H), 7.63 (d, 2H), 7.29-7.18 (m, 3H), 7.02-6.96 (m, 1H), 6.50-6.46 (m, 2H), 4.17-4.12 (m, 1H), 3.95-3.88 (m, 2H), 3.45 (s, 3H), 3.18-3.04 (m, 2H), 2.92-2.67 (m, 2H), 2.03 9s, 3H), 1.65-1.46 (m, 4H). MS (ESI+) m/e 531 (M+H)⁺.

25

WHAT IS CLAIMED IS

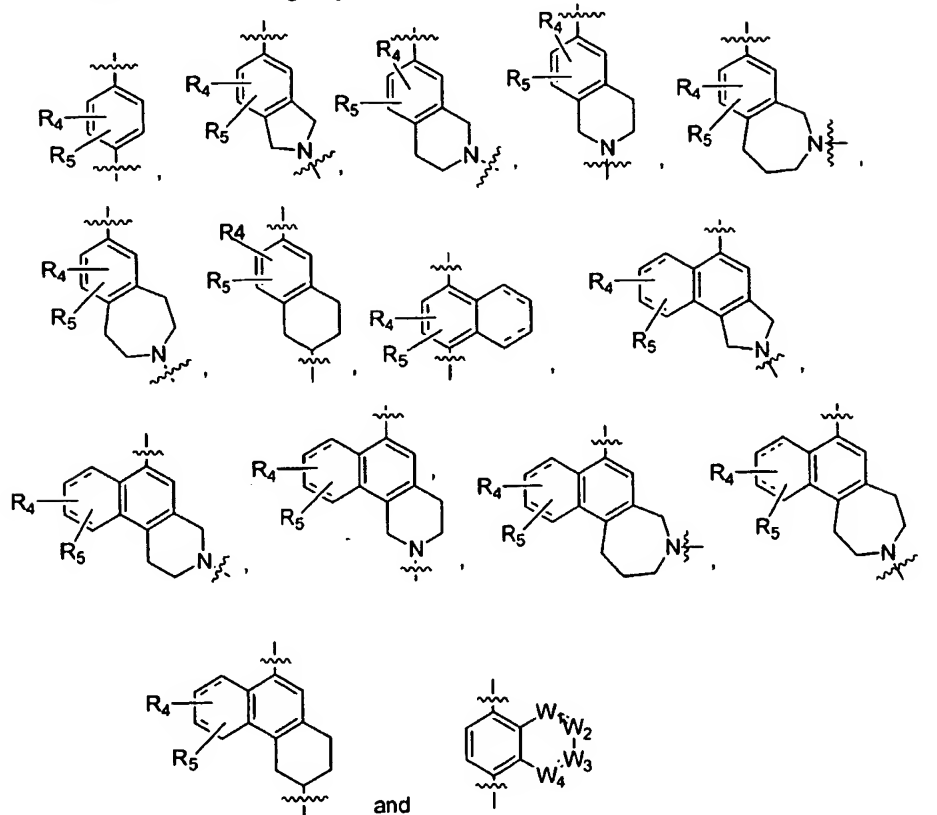
1. A compound of formula (I)



5

or a therapeutically acceptable salt or prodrug thereof, wherein

A is selected from the group consisting of

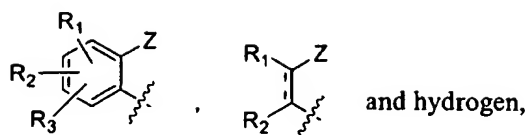


10

wherein the dotted line is either absent or is a single bond;

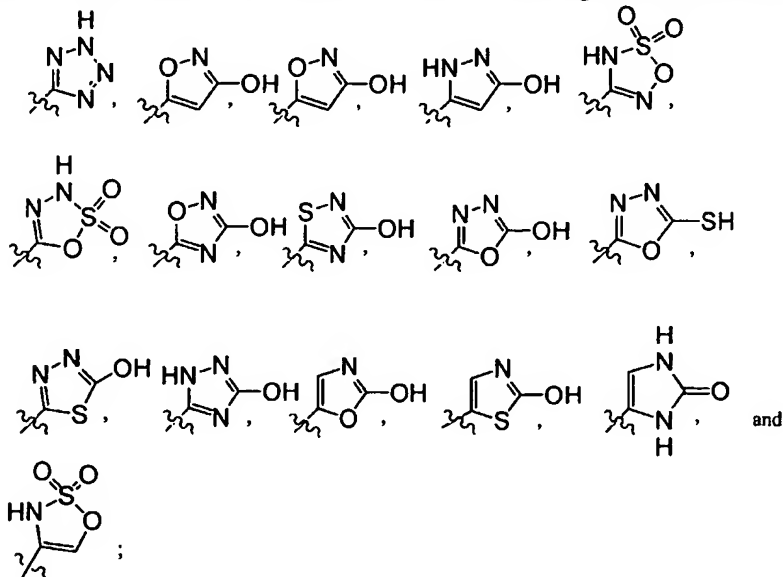
B is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, aryl, arylalkyl, heterocycle and heterocyclealkyl;

D is selected from the group consisting of



and hydrogen,

wherein Z is selected from the group consisting of alkoxy, alkyl, alkylNHSO₂-, amino, arylNHSO₂-, cyano, nitro, -CO₂P₁, -SO₃H, -PO(OH)₂, -CH₂PO(OH)₂, -CHFPO(OH)₂, -CF₂(PO(OH)₂), -C(=NH)NH₂, and the following 5-membered heterocycles:

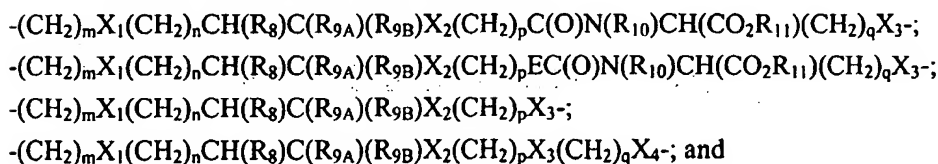


5

wherein P₁ and P₂ are independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, alkenyl, arylalkyl, cycloalkyl and (cycloalkyl)alkyl;

R₁, R₂, R₃, R₄ and R₅ are independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkoxy, alkyl, aryl, arylalkyl, cyano, halo, haloalkoxy, haloalkyl, heterocycle, heterocyclealkyl, hydroxy, hydroxyalkyl, nitro, NR_AR_B, NR_AR_BC(O), NR_AR_BC(O)alkyl and NR_AR_BC(O)alkenyl, wherein R_A and R_B are independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, alkoxycarbonyl, alkylsulfonyl, aryl, arylalkylcarbonyl, arylcarbonyl, arylsulfonyl and (R_CR_DN)carbonyl wherein R_C and R_D are independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, aryl, and arylalkyl, or R_A and R_B taken together with the nitrogen to which they are attached form a ring selected from the group consisting of pyrrolidine, piperidine, morpholine, homopiperidine and piperazine;

L is selected from the group consisting of



20

$-(CH_2)_mX_1(CH_2)_nCH(R_8)C(R_{9A})(R_{9B})X_2(CH_2)_pE(CH_2)_qX_3-$, wherein each group is drawn with the left end attached to A and the right end attached to B;

m, n, p and q are independently between 0-4;

R_8 is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, hydroxy, NR_AR_B and

5 $(NR_AR_B)alkyl$;

R_{9A} and R_{9B} are independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, hydroxyalkyl and $R_ER_FNalkyl$, wherein R_E and R_F are independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, alkoxycarbonyl and alkanoyl, or R_{9A} and R_{9B} taken together are oxo;

10 R_{10} is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, alkanoyl and alkoxycarbonyl;

R_{11} is independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, alkenyl, arylalkyl, cycloalkyl, and (cycloalkyl)alkyl;

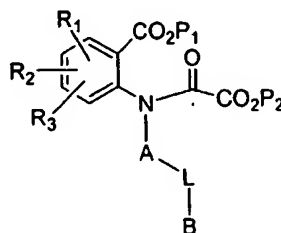
E is selected from the group consisting of aryl and cycloalkyl;

15 X_1 , X_2 , X_3 , and X_4 are independently absent or are independently selected from the group consisting of NR_G , O, S, S(O) and S(O)₂, wherein R_G is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, alkanoyl and alkoxycarbonyl; and

W_1 , W_2 , W_3 and W_4 are independently selected from the group consisting of CH, CH₂, N, NH and O.

20

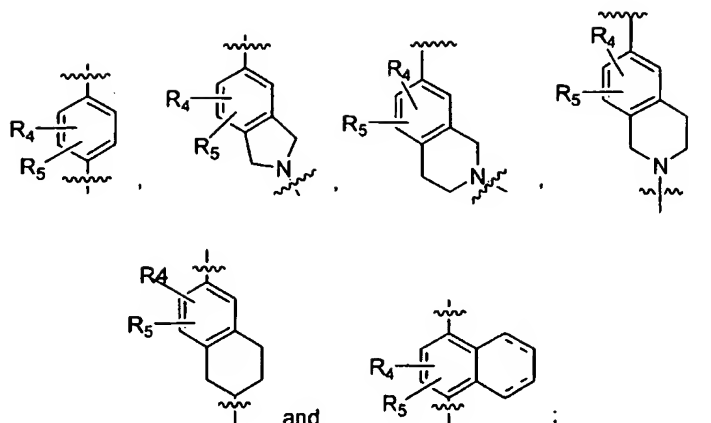
2. The compound according to claim 1 of formula (II)



(II),

25 or a therapeutically acceptable salt or prodrug thereof wherein A, B, L, P_1 , P_2 , R_1 , R_2 , and R_3 are defined in Claim 1.

3. The compound according to claim 2, wherein A is selected from the group consisting of



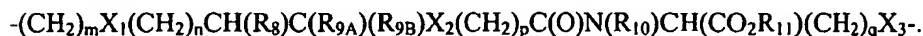
R₁, R₂, R₃, R₄ and R₅ are independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkoxy, alkyl, cyano, halo, haloalkoxy, haloalkyl, heterocycle, hydroxy, hydroxyalkyl, nitro, NR_AR_B, NR_AR_BC(O), NR_AR_BC(O)alkyl and NR_AR_BC(O)alkenyl;

5 R₁₀ is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen and alkyl; and

R₁₁ is independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl and arylalkyl.

4. The compound according to claim 2, wherein

10 L is



5. The compound according to claim 2, wherein

L is

15 $-(\text{CH}_2)_m\text{X}_1(\text{CH}_2)_n\text{CH}(\text{R}_8)\text{C}(\text{R}_{9A})(\text{R}_{9B})\text{X}_2(\text{CH}_2)_p\text{C}(\text{O})\text{N}(\text{R}_{10})\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{R}_{11})(\text{CH}_2)_q\text{X}_3-$; and

R₈ is NR_AR_B.

6. The compound according to claim 2, wherein

L is

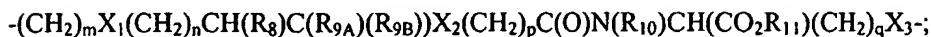
20 $-(\text{CH}_2)_m\text{X}_1(\text{CH}_2)_n\text{CH}(\text{R}_8)\text{C}(\text{R}_{9A})(\text{R}_{9B})\text{X}_2(\text{CH}_2)_p\text{C}(\text{O})\text{N}(\text{R}_{10})\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{R}_{11})(\text{CH}_2)_q\text{X}_3-$;

R₈ is NR_AR_B; and

R_{9A} and R_{9B} together are oxo.

7. The compound according to claim 2, wherein

25 L is



R₈ is NR_AR_B;

R_{9A} and R_{9B} together are oxo; and
 X_2 is NR_C .

8. The compound according to claim 2, wherein

5 L is

$-(CH_2)_mX_1(CH_2)_nCH(R_8)C(R_{9A})(R_{9B})X_2(CH_2)_pC(O)N(R_{10})CH(CO_2R_{11})(CH_2)_qX_3-$

R_8 is NR_AR_B ;

R_{9A} and R_{9B} together are oxo;

X_2 is NR_C ; and

10 B is selected from the group consisting of aryl and heterocycle.

9. The compound according to claim 2, wherein

L is

$-(CH_2)_mX_1(CH_2)_nCH(R_8)C(R_{9A})(R_{9B})X_2(CH_2)_pC(O)N(R_{10})CH(CO_2R_{11})(CH_2)_qX_3-$

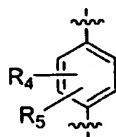
15 R_8 is NR_AR_B ;

R_{9A} and R_{9B} together are oxo;

X_2 is NR_C ;

B is selected from the group consisting of aryl and heterocycle; and

A is



20

10. The compound according to claim 9, which is

N-[5-({*N*-acetyl-4-[(carboxycarbonyl)(2-carboxyphenyl)amino]-3-ethylphenylalanyl} amino)pentanoyl]-*L*-tyrosine.

25

11. The compound according to claim 2, wherein

L is

$-(CH_2)_mX_1(CH_2)_nCH(R_8)C(R_{9A})(R_{9B})X_2(CH_2)_pC(O)N(R_{10})CH(CO_2R_{11})(CH_2)_qX_3-$

R_8 is NR_AR_B ;

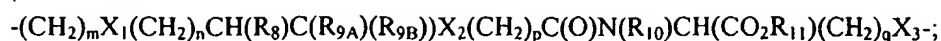
30 R_{9A} and R_{9B} together are oxo;

X_2 is NR_C ; and

B is hydrogen.

12. The compound according to claim 2, wherein

L is



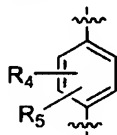
R_8 is NR_AR_B ;

R_{9A} and R_{9B} together are oxo;

5 X_2 is NR_C ;

B is hydrogen; and

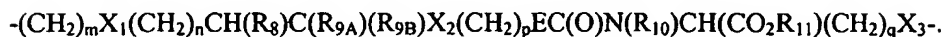
A is



10 13. The compound according to claim 12, which is
N-[5-({N-acetyl-4-[(carboxycarbonyl)(2-carboxyphenyl)amino]-3-ethylphenylalanyl}amino)pentanoyl]-L-norleucine.

14. The compound according to claim 2, wherein

15 L is



15. The compound according to claim 2, wherein

L is

20 $-(\text{CH}_2)_m\text{X}_1(\text{CH}_2)_n\text{CH}(\text{R}_8)\text{C}(\text{R}_{9A})(\text{R}_{9B})\text{X}_2(\text{CH}_2)_p\text{EC}(\text{O})\text{N}(\text{R}_{10})\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{R}_{11})(\text{CH}_2)_q\text{X}_3^-$; and
 R_8 is NR_AR_B .

16. The compound according to claim 2, wherein

L is

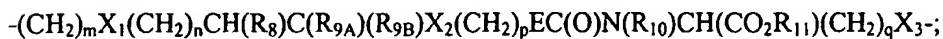
25 $-(\text{CH}_2)_m\text{X}_1(\text{CH}_2)_n\text{CH}(\text{R}_8)\text{C}(\text{R}_{9A})(\text{R}_{9B})\text{X}_2(\text{CH}_2)_p\text{EC}(\text{O})\text{N}(\text{R}_{10})\text{CH}(\text{CO}_2\text{R}_{11})(\text{CH}_2)_q\text{X}_3^-$;

R_8 is NR_AR_B ; and

R_{9A} and R_{9B} together are oxo.

17. The compound according to claim 2, wherein

30 L is



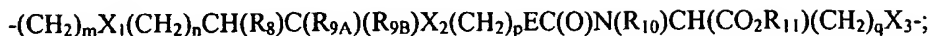
R_8 is NR_AR_B ;

R_{9A} and R_{9B} together are oxo; and

X_2 is NR_C .

18. The compound according to claim 2, wherein

L is



5

R_8 is NR_AR_B ;

R_{9A} and R_{9B} together are oxo;

X_2 is NR_C ; and

B is hydrogen.

10 19. The compound according to claim 2, wherein

L is



R_8 is NR_AR_B ;

R_{9A} and R_{9B} together are oxo;

15

X_2 is NR_C ;

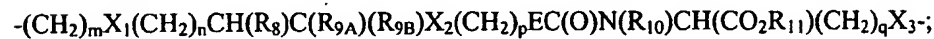
B is hydrogen; and

E is cycloalkyl.

20. The compound according to claim 2, wherein

20

L is



R_8 is NR_AR_B ;

R_{9A} and R_{9B} together are oxo;

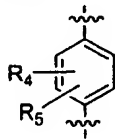
X_2 is NR_C ;

25

B is hydrogen;

E is cycloalkyl; and

A is



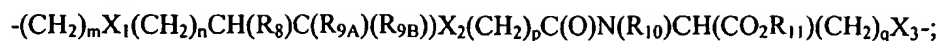
30

21. The compound according to claim 20, which is

N-{{[4-({[N-acetyl-4-[(carboxycarbonyl)(2-carboxyphenyl)amino]-3-(2-hydroxyethyl)phenylalanyl]amino}methyl)cyclohexyl]carbonyl}-L-norleucine.

22. The compound according to claim 2, wherein

L is



R_8 is $\text{NR}_\text{A}\text{R}_\text{B}$;

$\text{R}_{9\text{A}}$ and $\text{R}_{9\text{B}}$ together are oxo;

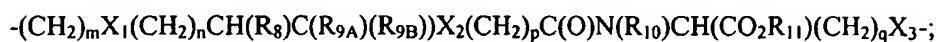
5 X_2 is NR_C ;

X_3 is S; and

B is alkyl.

23. The compound according to claim 2, wherein

10 L is



R_8 is $\text{NR}_\text{A}\text{R}_\text{B}$;

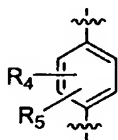
$\text{R}_{9\text{A}}$ and $\text{R}_{9\text{B}}$ together are oxo;

X_2 is NR_C ;

15 X_3 is S;

B is alkyl; and

A is



20 24. The compound according to claim 23, selected from the group consisting of
N-{5-[(*N*-acetyl-4-[(carboxycarbonyl)(2-carboxyphenyl)amino]-3-ethylphenylalanyl)amino]pentanoyl}-L-methionine;

methyl *N*-{5-[(*N*-acetyl-4-[(carboxycarbonyl)(2-carboxyphenyl)amino]-3-ethylphenylalanyl)amino]pentanoyl}-L-methioninate;

25 *N*-{5-[(*N*-acetyl-4-[(carboxycarbonyl)(2-carboxyphenyl)amino]-3-ethylphenylalanyl)amino]pentanoyl}-*S*-ethyl-L-homocysteine;

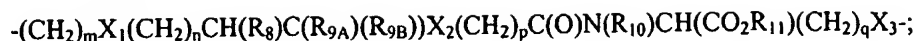
N-{5-[(*N*-acetyl-4-[(carboxycarbonyl)(2-carboxyphenyl)amino]-3-isopropylphenylalanyl)amino]pentanoyl}-L-methionine;

30 *N*-{5-[(*N*-acetyl-4-[(carboxycarbonyl)(2-carboxy-5-chlorophenyl)amino]-3-ethylphenylalanyl)amino]pentanoyl}-L-methionine; and

N-{5-[(*N*-acetyl-4-[(carboxycarbonyl)(2-carboxyphenyl)amino]-3-(2-hydroxyethyl)phenylalanyl)amino]pentanoyl}-L-methionine.

25. The compound according to claim 2, wherein

L is



R_8 is NR_AR_B ;

R_{9A} and R_{9B} together are oxo;

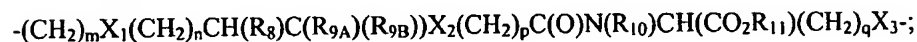
X_2 is NR_C ;

X_3 is S; and

B is aryl.

26. The compound according to claim 2, wherein

L is



R_8 is NR_AR_B ;

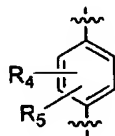
R_{9A} and R_{9B} together are oxo;

X_2 is NR_C ;

X_3 is S;

B is aryl; and

A is

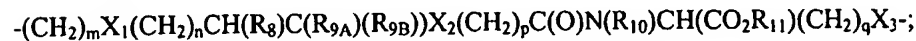


27. The compound according to claim 26, which is

N-{5-[(*N*-acetyl-4-[(carboxycarbonyl)(2-carboxyphenyl)amino]-3-ethylphenylalanyl)amino]pentanoyl}-*S*-benzyl-L-cysteine.

28. The compound according to claim 2, wherein

L is



R_8 is NR_AR_B ;

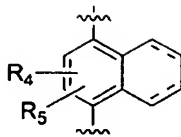
R_{9A} and R_{9B} together are oxo;

X_2 is NR_C ;

X_3 is S;

B is alkyl; and

A is



29. The compound according to claim 28, which is
N-(5-{{3-(4-[(carboxycarbonyl)(2-carboxyphenyl)amino]-1-naphthyl)-*N*-
 5 (methoxycarbonyl)alanyl]amino}pentanoyl)-*L*-methionine.
30. The compound according to claim 2, wherein
 L is $-(\text{CH}_2)_m\text{X}_1(\text{CH}_2)_n\text{CH}(\text{R}_8)\text{C}(\text{R}_{9A})(\text{R}_{9B})\text{X}_2(\text{CH}_2)_p\text{X}_3-$.
- 10 31. The compound according to claim 2, wherein
 L is $-(\text{CH}_2)_m\text{X}_1(\text{CH}_2)_n\text{CH}(\text{R}_8)\text{C}(\text{R}_{9A})(\text{R}_{9B})\text{X}_2(\text{CH}_2)_p\text{X}_3-$; and
 R_8 is NR_AR_B .
- 15 32. The compound according to claim 2, wherein
 L is $-(\text{CH}_2)_m\text{X}_1(\text{CH}_2)_n\text{CH}(\text{R}_8)\text{C}(\text{R}_{9A})(\text{R}_{9B})\text{X}_2(\text{CH}_2)_p\text{X}_3-$;
 R_8 is NR_AR_B ; and
 R_{9A} and R_{9B} together are oxo.
- 20 33. The compound according to claim 2, wherein
 L is $-(\text{CH}_2)_m\text{X}_1(\text{CH}_2)_n\text{CH}(\text{R}_8)\text{C}(\text{R}_{9A})(\text{R}_{9B})\text{X}_2(\text{CH}_2)_p\text{X}_3-$;
 R_8 is NR_AR_B ;
 R_{9A} and R_{9B} together are oxo; and
 X_2 is NR_C .
- 25 34. The compound according to claim 2, wherein
 L is $-(\text{CH}_2)_m\text{X}_1(\text{CH}_2)_n\text{CH}(\text{R}_8)\text{C}(\text{R}_{9A})(\text{R}_{9B})\text{X}_2(\text{CH}_2)_p\text{X}_3-$;
 R_8 is NR_AR_B ;
 R_{9A} and R_{9B} together are oxo;
 X_2 is NR_C ; and
 30 X_3 is O.
35. The compound according to claim 2, wherein
 L is $-(\text{CH}_2)_m\text{X}_1(\text{CH}_2)_n\text{CH}(\text{R}_8)\text{C}(\text{R}_{9A})(\text{R}_{9B})\text{X}_2(\text{CH}_2)_p\text{X}_3-$;
 R_8 is NR_AR_B ;

R_{9A} and R_{9B} together are oxo;

X_2 is NR_C ;

X_3 is O; and

B is aryl.

5

36. The compound according to claim 2, wherein

L is $-(CH_2)_mX_1(CH_2)_nCH(R_8)C(R_{9A})(R_{9B})X_2(CH_2)_pX_3-$;

R_8 is NR_AR_B ;

R_{9A} and R_{9B} together are oxo;

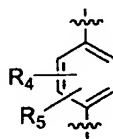
10

X_2 is NR_C ;

X_3 is O;

B is aryl; and

A is



15

37. The compound according to claim 36, selected from the group consisting of

methyl 2-[4-({N-[(allyloxy)carbonyl]-4-[(carboxycarbonyl)(2-carboxyphenyl)amino]-L-phenylalanyl}amino)butoxy]-6-hydroxybenzoate;

20 methyl 2-[4-({N-acetyl-4-[(carboxycarbonyl)(2-carboxyphenyl)amino]-3-ethylphenylalanyl}amino)butoxy]-6-hydroxybenzoate;

methyl 4-[4-({N-acetyl-4-amino-3-ethylphenylalanyl}amino)butoxy]-2-hydroxy-1,1'-biphenyl-3-carboxylate;

2-[4-({N-acetyl-4-[(carboxycarbonyl)(2-carboxyphenyl)amino]-3-ethylphenylalanyl}amino)butoxy]-6-hydroxybenzoic acid;

25 methyl 6-[4-({N-acetyl-4-[(carboxycarbonyl)(2-carboxyphenyl)amino]-3-ethylphenylalanyl}amino)butoxy]-3-bromo-2-hydroxybenzoate;

methyl 2-(4-[4-[(carboxycarbonyl)(2-carboxyphenyl)amino]-N-(methoxycarbonyl)-L-phenylalanyl]amino)butoxy)-6-hydroxy-4-pentylbenzoate;

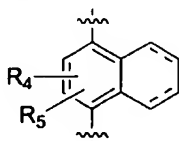
30 methyl 2-(4-[4-[(carboxycarbonyl)(2-carboxyphenyl)amino]-N-(methoxycarbonyl)-L-phenylalanyl]amino)butoxy)-6-hydroxy-4-methoxybenzoate;

methyl 3-(4-[4-[(carboxycarbonyl)(2-carboxyphenyl)amino]-N-(methoxycarbonyl)-L-phenylalanyl]amino)butoxy)-5-hydroxy-1,1'-biphenyl-4-carboxylate;

methyl 2-(4-[4-[(carboxycarbonyl)(2-carboxyphenyl)amino]-N-(methoxycarbonyl)-L-phenylalanyl]amino)butoxy)-6-hydroxy-4-methylbenzoate;

- methyl 2-(4-{[4-[(carboxycarbonyl)(2-carboxyphenyl)amino]-*N*-(methoxycarbonyl)-L-phenylalanyl]amino}butoxy)-4-chloro-6-hydroxybenzoate;
 methyl 2-(4-{[4-[(carboxycarbonyl)(2-carboxyphenyl)amino]-*N*-(methoxycarbonyl)-L-phenylalanyl]amino}butoxy)-6-hydroxybenzoate;
 5 4-[(carboxycarbonyl)(2-carboxyphenyl)amino]-*N*-(4-[2-(aminocarbonyl)-3-hydroxyphenoxy]butyl)-*N*-(methoxycarbonyl)-L-phenylalaninamide;
 methyl 3-(4-{[4-[(carboxycarbonyl)(2-carboxyphenyl)amino]-*N*-(methoxycarbonyl)-L-phenylalanyl]amino}butoxy)-1-hydroxy-2-naphthoate;
 4-[(carboxycarbonyl)(2-carboxyphenyl)amino]-*N*-(4-{3-hydroxy-2-
 10 [(methylamino)carbonyl]phenoxy}butyl)-*N*-(methoxycarbonyl)-L-phenylalaninamide;
 4-[(carboxycarbonyl)(2-carboxyphenyl)amino]-*N*-(4-{2-[(ethylamino)carbonyl]-3-hydroxyphenoxy}butyl)-*N*-(methoxycarbonyl)-L-phenylalaninamide;
N-(4-[2-(acetylamino)-3-hydroxyphenoxy]butyl)-4-[(carboxycarbonyl)(2-carboxyphenyl)amino]-*N*-(methoxycarbonyl)-L-phenylalaninamide; and
 15 4-[(carboxycarbonyl)(2-carboxyphenyl)amino]-*N*-(4-{2-[(dimethylamino)carbonyl]-3-hydroxyphenoxy}butyl)-*N*-(methoxycarbonyl)-L-phenylalaninamide.

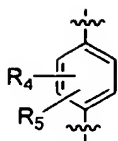
38. The compound according to claim 2, wherein
 L is $-(\text{CH}_2)_m\text{X}_1(\text{CH}_2)_n\text{CH}(\text{R}_8)\text{C}(\text{R}_{9A})(\text{R}_{9B})\text{X}_2(\text{CH}_2)_p\text{X}_3-$;
 20 R_8 is NR_AR_B ;
 R_{9A} and R_{9B} together are oxo;
 X_2 is NR_C ;
 X_3 is O;
 B is aryl; and
 25 A is



39. The compound according to claim 38, selected from the group consisting of
 methyl 2-[(5-{[*N*-acetyl-3-(4-amino-1-naphthyl)-L-alanyl]amino}pentyl)oxy]-6-
 30 hydroxy-4-methylbenzoate; and
 3-(5-{[*N*-acetyl-3-{4-[(carboxycarbonyl)(2-carboxyphenyl)amino]-1-naphthyl}-L-alanyl]amino}pentyl)oxy)-2-naphthoic acid.
 40. The compound according to claim 2, wherein

L is $-(CH_2)_mX_1(CH_2)_nCH(R_8)C(R_{9A})(R_{9B})X_2(CH_2)_pX_3^-$; and
 R_8 is hydrogen.

41. The compound according to claim 2, wherein
 5 L is $-(CH_2)_mX_1(CH_2)_nCH(R_8)C(R_{9A})(R_{9B})X_2(CH_2)_pX_3^-$;
 R_8 is hydrogen; and
 R_{9A} and R_{9B} together are oxo.
42. The compound according to claim 2, wherein
 10 L is $-(CH_2)_mX_1(CH_2)_nCH(R_8)C(R_{9A})(R_{9B})X_2(CH_2)_pX_3^-$;
 R_8 is hydrogen;
 R_{9A} and R_{9B} together are oxo; and
 X_2 is NR_C .
43. The compound according to claim 2, wherein
 15 L is $-(CH_2)_mX_1(CH_2)_nCH(R_8)C(R_{9A})(R_{9B})X_2(CH_2)_pX_3^-$;
 R_8 is hydrogen;
 R_{9A} and R_{9B} together are oxo;
 X_2 is NR_C ; and
 20 X_3 is O.
44. The compound according to claim 2, wherein
 L is $-(CH_2)_mX_1(CH_2)_nCH(R_8)C(R_{9A})(R_{9B})X_2(CH_2)_pX_3^-$;
 R_8 is hydrogen;
 25 R_{9A} and R_{9B} together are oxo;
 X_2 is NR_C ;
 X_3 is O; and
 B is aryl.
45. The compound according to claim 2, wherein
 30 L is $-(CH_2)_mX_1(CH_2)_nCH(R_8)C(R_{9A})(R_{9B})X_2(CH_2)_pX_3^-$;
 R_8 is hydrogen;
 R_{9A} and R_{9B} together are oxo;
 X_2 is NR_C ;
 35 X_3 is O; and
 B is aryl; and
 A is

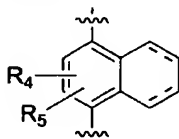


46. The compound according to claim 45, which is
methyl 2-(4-{{3-(4-[(carboxycarbonyl)(2-carboxyphenyl)amino]-3-ethylphenyl)propanoyl}amino}butoxy)-6-hydroxybenzoate.

5

47. The compound according to claim 2, wherein
L is $-(CH_2)_mX_1(CH_2)_nCH(R_8)C(R_{9A})(R_{9B})X_2(CH_2)_pX_3-$;
 R_8 is hydrogen;
 R_{9A} and R_{9B} together are oxo;
 X_2 is NR_C ;
 X_3 is O;
B is aryl; and
A is

10



15

48. The compound according to claim 47, which is
2-((carboxycarbonyl){4-[3-(4-[3-hydroxy-2-(methoxycarbonyl)phenoxy]butyl)amino]-3-oxopropyl]}-[(carboxycarbonyl)(2-carboxyphenyl)amino]-1-naphthyl)amino)benzoic acid.

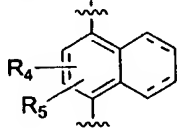
20

49. The compound according to claim 2, wherein
L is $-(CH_2)_mX_1(CH_2)_nCH(R_8)C(R_{9A})(R_{9B})X_2(CH_2)_pX_3-$;
 R_8 is hydrogen; and
 R_{9A} is alkyl.

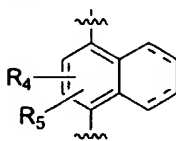
25

50. The compound according to claim 2, wherein
L is $-(CH_2)_mX_1(CH_2)_nCH(R_8)C(R_{9A})(R_{9B})X_2(CH_2)_pX_3-$;
 R_8 is hydrogen;
 R_{9A} is alkyl; and
 X_2 is NR_C .

30

51. The compound according to claim 2, wherein
 L is $-(CH_2)_mX_1(CH_2)_nCH(R_8)C(R_{9A})(R_{9B})X_2(CH_2)_pX_3-$;
 R_8 is hydrogen;
 R_{9A} is alkyl;
 X_2 is NR_C ; and
 X_3 is O.
52. The compound according to claim 2, wherein
 L is $-(CH_2)_mX_1(CH_2)_nCH(R_8)C(R_{9A})(R_{9B})X_2(CH_2)_pX_3-$;
 R_8 is hydrogen;
 R_{9A} is alkyl;
 X_2 is NR_C ;
 X_3 is O; and
 B is aryl.
53. The compound according to claim 2, wherein
 L is $-(CH_2)_mX_1(CH_2)_nCH(R_8)C(R_{9A})(R_{9B})X_2(CH_2)_pX_3-$;
 R_8 is hydrogen;
 R_{9A} is alkyl;
 X_2 is NR_C ;
 X_3 is O;
 B is aryl; and
 A is
- 
54. The compound according to claim 53, which is
 methyl 2-(4-{[3-(4-[(carboxycarbonyl)(2-carboxyphenyl)amino]-1-naphthyl)-1-methylpropyl]amino}butoxy)-6-hydroxybenzoate.
55. The compound according to claim 2, wherein
 L is $-(CH_2)_mX_1(CH_2)_nCH(R_8)C(R_{9A})(R_{9B})X_2(CH_2)_pX_3-$;
 R_8 is hydrogen; and
 R_{9A} and R_{9B} are both hydrogen.

56. The compound according to claim 2, wherein
L is $-(\text{CH}_2)_m\text{X}_1(\text{CH}_2)_n\text{CH}(\text{R}_8)\text{C}(\text{R}_{9A})(\text{R}_{9B})\text{X}_2(\text{CH}_2)_p\text{X}_3^-$;
 R_8 is hydrogen;
 R_{9A} and R_{9B} are both hydrogen; and
X₂ is NR_C .
57. The compound according to claim 2, wherein
L is $-(\text{CH}_2)_m\text{X}_1(\text{CH}_2)_n\text{CH}(\text{R}_8)\text{C}(\text{R}_{9A})(\text{R}_{9B})\text{X}_2(\text{CH}_2)_p\text{X}_3^-$;
 R_8 is hydrogen;
 R_{9A} and R_{9B} are both hydrogen;
X₂ is NR_C ; and
X₃ is O.
58. The compound according to claim 2, wherein
L is $-(\text{CH}_2)_m\text{X}_1(\text{CH}_2)_n\text{CH}(\text{R}_8)\text{C}(\text{R}_{9A})(\text{R}_{9B})\text{X}_2(\text{CH}_2)_p\text{X}_3^-$;
 R_8 is hydrogen;
 R_{9A} and R_{9B} are both hydrogen;
X₂ is NR_C ;
X₃ is O; and
B is aryl.
59. The compound according to claim 2, wherein
L is $-(\text{CH}_2)_m\text{X}_1(\text{CH}_2)_n\text{CH}(\text{R}_8)\text{C}(\text{R}_{9A})(\text{R}_{9B})\text{X}_2(\text{CH}_2)_p\text{X}_3^-$;
 R_8 is hydrogen;
 R_{9A} and R_{9B} are both hydrogen;
X₂ is NR_C ;
X₃ is O;
B is aryl; and
A is



60. The compound according to claim 59, which is methyl 2-(4-{[3-(4-[(carboxycarbonyl)(2-carboxyphenyl)amino]-1-naphthyl)propyl]amino}butoxy)-6-hydroxybenzoate.

61. The compound according to claim 2, wherein
L is $-(\text{CH}_2)_m\text{X}_1(\text{CH}_2)_n\text{CH}(\text{R}_8)\text{C}(\text{R}_{9A})(\text{R}_{9B})\text{X}_2(\text{CH}_2)_p\text{X}_3(\text{CH}_2)_q\text{X}_4-$.
- 5 62. The compound according to claim 2, wherein
L is $-(\text{CH}_2)_m\text{X}_1(\text{CH}_2)_n\text{CH}(\text{R}_8)\text{C}(\text{R}_{9A})(\text{R}_{9B})\text{X}_2(\text{CH}_2)_p\text{X}_3(\text{CH}_2)_q\text{X}_4-$; and
 R_8 is NR_AR_B .
- 10 63. The compound according to claim 2, wherein
L is $-(\text{CH}_2)_m\text{X}_1(\text{CH}_2)_n\text{CH}(\text{R}_8)\text{C}(\text{R}_{9A})(\text{R}_{9B})\text{X}_2(\text{CH}_2)_p\text{X}_3(\text{CH}_2)_q\text{X}_4-$;
 R_8 is NR_AR_B ; and
 R_{9A} and R_{9B} together are oxo.
- 15 64. The compound according to claim 2, wherein
L is $-(\text{CH}_2)_m\text{X}_1(\text{CH}_2)_n\text{CH}(\text{R}_8)\text{C}(\text{R}_{9A})(\text{R}_{9B})\text{X}_2(\text{CH}_2)_p\text{X}_3(\text{CH}_2)_q\text{X}_4-$;
 R_8 is NR_AR_B ;
 R_{9A} and R_{9B} together are oxo; and
 X_2 is NR_C .
- 20 65. The compound according to claim 2, wherein
L is $-(\text{CH}_2)_m\text{X}_1(\text{CH}_2)_n\text{CH}(\text{R}_8)\text{C}(\text{R}_{9A})(\text{R}_{9B})\text{X}_2(\text{CH}_2)_p\text{X}_3(\text{CH}_2)_q\text{X}_4-$;
 R_8 is NR_AR_B ;
 R_{9A} and R_{9B} together are oxo;
 X_2 is NR_C ; and
25 X_3 is O.
- 30 66. The compound according to claim 2, wherein
L is $-(\text{CH}_2)_m\text{X}_1(\text{CH}_2)_n\text{CH}(\text{R}_8)\text{C}(\text{R}_{9A})(\text{R}_{9B})\text{X}_2(\text{CH}_2)_p\text{X}_3(\text{CH}_2)_q\text{X}_4-$;
 R_8 is NR_AR_B ;
 R_{9A} and R_{9B} together are oxo;
 X_2 is NR_C ;
 X_3 is O; and
 X_4 is O.
- 35 67. The compound according to claim 2, wherein
L is $-(\text{CH}_2)_m\text{X}_1(\text{CH}_2)_n\text{CH}(\text{R}_8)\text{C}(\text{R}_{9A})(\text{R}_{9B})\text{X}_2(\text{CH}_2)_p\text{X}_3(\text{CH}_2)_q\text{X}_4-$;
 R_8 is NR_AR_B ;

R_{9A} and R_{9B} together are oxo;

X_2 is NR_C ;

X_3 is O;

X_4 is O; and

B is aryl.

5

68. The compound according to claim 2, wherein

L is $-(CH_2)_mX_1(CH_2)_nCH(R_8)C(R_{9A})(R_{9B})X_2(CH_2)_pX_3(CH_2)_qX_4-$;

R_8 is NR_AR_B ;

10

R_{9A} and R_{9B} together are oxo;

X_2 is NR_C ;

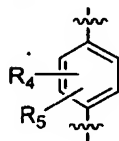
X_3 is O;

X_4 is O;

B is aryl; and

15

A is



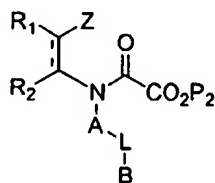
69. The compound according to claim 68, which is

methyl 2-{2-[2-({*N*-[(allyloxy)carbonyl]-4-[(carboxycarbonyl)(2-

20

carboxyphenyl)amino]-L-phenylalanyl]amino)ethoxy]ethoxy}-6-hydroxybenzoate.

70. A compound according to Claim 1 of formula (III)



25

(III),

or a therapeutically acceptable salt or prodrug thereof wherein A, B, L, Z, P_2 , R_1 , and R_2 are defined in Claim 1.

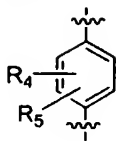
71. The compound according to claim 70, wherein

30

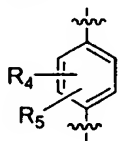
L is $-(CH_2)_mX_1(CH_2)_nCH(R_8)C(R_{9A})(R_{9B})X_2(CH_2)_pX_3-$.

72. The compound according to claim 70, wherein
L is $-(CH_2)_mX_1(CH_2)_nCH(R_8)C(R_{9A})(R_{9B})X_2(CH_2)_pX_3-$; and
 R_8 is NR_AR_B .
- 5 73. The compound according to claim 70, wherein
L is $-(CH_2)_mX_1(CH_2)_nCH(R_8)C(R_{9A})(R_{9B})X_2(CH_2)_pX_3-$;
 R_8 is NR_AR_B ; and
 R_{9A} and R_{9B} together are oxo.
- 10 74. The compound according to claim 70, wherein
L is $-(CH_2)_mX_1(CH_2)_nCH(R_8)C(R_{9A})(R_{9B})X_2(CH_2)_pX_3-$;
 R_8 is NR_AR_B ;
 R_{9A} and R_{9B} together are oxo; and
 X_2 is NR_C .
- 15 75. The compound according to claim 70, wherein
L is $-(CH_2)_mX_1(CH_2)_nCH(R_8)C(R_{9A})(R_{9B})X_2(CH_2)_pX_3-$;
 R_8 is NR_AR_B ;
 R_{9A} and R_{9B} together are oxo;
20 X_2 is NR_C ; and
 X_3 is O.
- 25 76. The compound according to claim 70, wherein
L is $-(CH_2)_mX_1(CH_2)_nCH(R_8)C(R_{9A})(R_{9B})X_2(CH_2)_pX_3-$;
 R_8 is NR_AR_B ;
 R_{9A} and R_{9B} together are oxo;
 X_2 is NR_C ;
 X_3 is O; and
B is aryl.
- 30 77. The compound according to claim 70, wherein
L is $-(CH_2)_mX_1(CH_2)_nCH(R_8)C(R_{9A})(R_{9B})X_2(CH_2)_pX_3-$;
 R_8 is NR_AR_B ;
 R_{9A} and R_{9B} together are oxo;
35 X_2 is NR_C ;
 X_3 is O;
B is aryl; and

A is



78. The compound according to claim 70, wherein
 5 L is $-(\text{CH}_2)_m\text{X}_1(\text{CH}_2)_n\text{CH}(\text{R}_8)\text{C}(\text{R}_{9A})(\text{R}_{9B})\text{X}_2(\text{CH}_2)_p\text{X}_3-$;
 R₈ is NR_AR_B ;
 R_{9A} and R_{9B} together are oxo;
 X₂ is NR_C ;
 X₃ is O;
 10 B is aryl;
 A is



; and

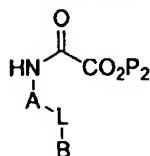
R₁ and R₂ are independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, aryl, arylalkyl, alkoxyalkyl.

15

79. The compound according to claim 78, selected from the group consisting of
 methyl 2-(4-{{N-(*tert*-butoxycarbonyl)-4-[(2-
 carboxybutyl)(carboxycarbonyl)amino]phenylalanyl]amino}butoxy)-6-hydroxybenzoate;
 methyl 2-(4-{{N-(*tert*-butoxycarbonyl)-4-[(carboxycarbonyl)(2-carboxy-3-
 20 phenylpropyl)amino]phenylalanyl]amino}butoxy)-6-hydroxybenzoate;
 methyl 2-(4-{{N-(*tert*-butoxycarbonyl)-4-[(carboxycarbonyl)(2-carboxy-2-
 phenylethyl)amino]phenylalanyl]amino}butoxy)-6-hydroxybenzoate;
 methyl 2-(4-{{N-(*tert*-butoxycarbonyl)-4-[(carboxycarbonyl)(2-carboxy-4-
 methoxybutyl)amino]phenylalanyl]amino}butoxy)-6-hydroxybenzoate;
 25 methyl 2-(4-{{N-(*tert*-butoxycarbonyl)-4-[(carboxycarbonyl)[2-carboxy-2-(4-
 hydroxyphenyl)ethyl]amino}phenylalanyl]amino}butoxy)-6-hydroxybenzoate;
 methyl 2-(4-{{N-(*tert*-butoxycarbonyl)-4-[(carboxycarbonyl)[2-carboxy-3-(4-
 hydroxy-3-methoxyphenyl)propyl]amino}phenylalanyl]amino}butoxy)-6-hydroxybenzoate;
 methyl 2-(4-{{N-(*tert*-butoxycarbonyl)-4-[(carboxycarbonyl)(2-
 30 carboxypentyl)amino]-L-phenylalanyl]amino}butoxy)-6-hydroxybenzoate;

methyl 2-(4-{{N-(*tert*-butoxycarbonyl)- 4-{{(carboxycarbonyl)[1-(carboxymethyl)propyl]amino}-L-phenylalanyl]amino}butoxy}-6-hydroxybenzoate; and
methyl 2-(4-{{N-(*tert*-butoxycarbonyl)- 4-{{(carboxycarbonyl)(2-carboxypropyl)amino]-L-phenylalanyl]amino}butoxy}-6-hydroxybenzoate.

- 5 80. A compound according to Claim 1 of formula (IV)



(IV);

or a therapeutically acceptable salt or prodrug thereof wherein A, B, L and P₂, are defined in Claim 1.

10

81. The compound according to claim 80, wherein
L is $-(\text{CH}_2)_m\text{X}_1(\text{CH}_2)_n\text{CH}(\text{R}_8)\text{C}(\text{R}_{9A})(\text{R}_{9B})\text{X}_2(\text{CH}_2)_p\text{X}_3-$.

82. The compound according to claim 80, wherein
15 L is $-(\text{CH}_2)_m\text{X}_1(\text{CH}_2)_n\text{CH}(\text{R}_8)\text{C}(\text{R}_{9A})(\text{R}_{9B})\text{X}_2(\text{CH}_2)_p\text{X}_3-$; and
R₈ is NR_AR_B.

83. The compound according to claim 80, wherein
L is $-(\text{CH}_2)_m\text{X}_1(\text{CH}_2)_n\text{CH}(\text{R}_8)\text{C}(\text{R}_{9A})(\text{R}_{9B})\text{X}_2(\text{CH}_2)_p\text{X}_3-$;
20 R₈ is NR_AR_B; and
R_{9A} and R_{9B} together are oxo.

84. The compound according to claim 80, wherein
L is $-(\text{CH}_2)_m\text{X}_1(\text{CH}_2)_n\text{CH}(\text{R}_8)\text{C}(\text{R}_{9A})(\text{R}_{9B})\text{X}_2(\text{CH}_2)_p\text{X}_3-$;
25 R₈ is NR_AR_B;
R_{9A} and R_{9B} together are oxo; and
X₂ is NR_C.

85. The compound according to claim 80, wherein
30 L is $-(\text{CH}_2)_m\text{X}_1(\text{CH}_2)_n\text{CH}(\text{R}_8)\text{C}(\text{R}_{9A})(\text{R}_{9B})\text{X}_2(\text{CH}_2)_p\text{X}_3-$;
R₈ is NR_AR_B;
R_{9A} and R_{9B} together are oxo;
X₂ is NR_C; and

X_3 is O.

86. The compound according to claim 80, wherein

L is $-(CH_2)_mX_1(CH_2)_nCH(R_8)C(R_{9A})(R_{9B})X_2(CH_2)_pX_3-$;

R_8 is NR_AR_B ;

R_{9A} and R_{9B} together are oxo;

X_2 is NR_C ;

X_3 is O; and

B is aryl.

87. The compound according to claim 80, wherein

L is $-(CH_2)_mX_1(CH_2)_nCH(R_8)C(R_{9A})(R_{9B})X_2(CH_2)_pX_3-$;

R_8 is NR_AR_B ;

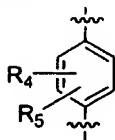
R_{9A} and R_{9B} together are oxo;

X_2 is NR_C ;

X_3 is O;

B is aryl; and

A is



88. The compound according to claim 87, selected from the group consisting of
methyl 2-(4-{{4-(carboxycarbonyl)amino-*N*-(*tert*-

butoxycarbonyl)phenylalanyl]amino}butoxy)-6-hydroxybenzoate;

benzyl 2-(4-{{4-(carboxycarbonyl)amino-*N*-(*tert*-

butoxycarbonyl)phenylalanyl]amino}butoxy)-6-hydroxybenzoate;

2-(4-{{4-(carboxycarbonyl)amino-*N*-(*tert*-butoxycarbonyl)-L-

phenylalanyl]amino}butoxy)-6-hydroxybenzoic acid;

2-(4-{{4-[(carboxycarbonyl)amino]-*N*-(methoxycarbonyl)-L-

phenylalanyl]amino}butoxy)-6-hydroxybenzoic acid;

methyl 2-(4-{{4-(carboxycarbonyl)amino]-amino-*N*-(methoxycarbonyl)-L-
phenylalanyl]amino}butoxy)-6-hydroxybenzoate;

4-[(carboxycarbonyl)amino]-*N*-[4-(3-hydroxy-2-nitrophenoxy)butyl]-*N*-
(methoxycarbonyl)-L-phenylalaninamide;

- benzyl 2-(4-{[4-(carboxycarbonyl)amino-*N*-(methoxycarbonyl)-L-phenylalanyl]amino}butoxy)-6-hydroxybenzoate;
2-[(carboxycarbonyl)amino]-5-[3-({4-[3-hydroxy-2-(methoxycarbonyl)phenoxy]butyl}amino)-3-oxopropyl]benzoic acid; and
5 *N*-{4-[2-(acetylamino)-3-hydroxyphenoxy]butyl}-4-[(carboxycarbonyl)amino]-amino-*N*-(methoxycarbonyl)-L-phenylalaninamide.
89. A pharmaceutical composition comprising a therapeutically effective amount of a compound of claim 1 in combination with a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier.
- 10 90. A method of selectively inhibiting protein tyrosine phosphatase 1B comprising administering a therapeutically effective amount of a compound of claim 1.
- 15 91. A method of treating disorders caused by overexpressed or altered protein tyrosine phosphatase 1B comprising administering a therapeutically effective amount of a compound of claim 1.
- 20 92. The method of claim 91, wherein the disorder is type I and type II diabetes, impaired glucose tolerance and insulin resistance.
- 25 93. The method of claim 91, wherein the disorder is obesity.
94. A method of claim 91, wherein the disorder is autoimmune disorders, acute and chronic inflammatory disorders, osteoporosis, cancer, malignant disorders.